

SpaceLogic C-Bus

Network Automation Controller

Application Controller

User Manual

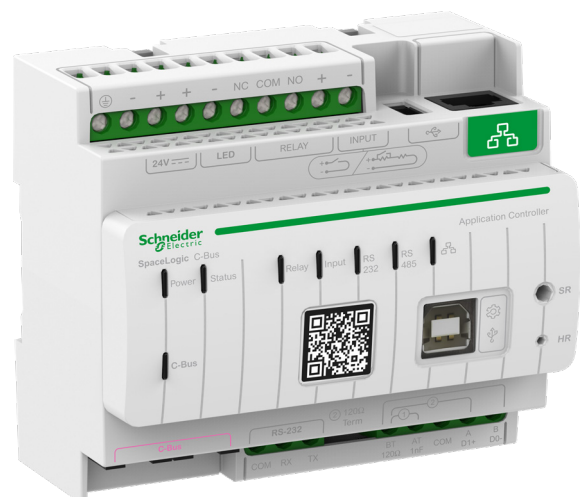
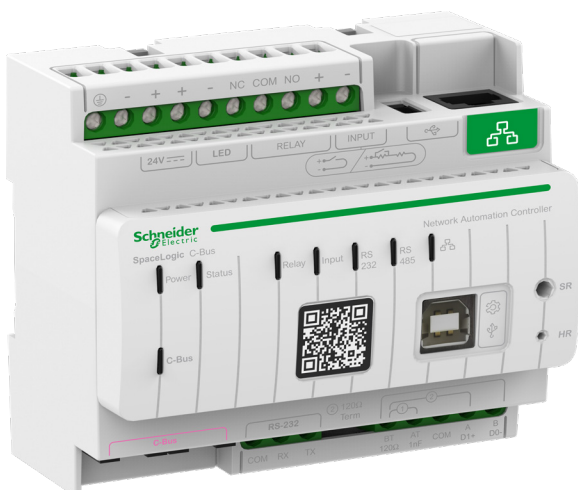
This document describes the programming interface for the Network Automation Controller and Application Controller. The software programming interface is embedded in the Controller and requires a web browser. Pre-programming and configuration cannot be performed without a Controller product.

02/2023

Firmware version 1.13.0

5500NAC2

5500AC2



Legal information

The Schneider Electric brand and all registered trademarks of Schneider Electric Industries SAS referred to in this manual are the sole property of Schneider Electric SA and its subsidiaries. They may not be used without the written approval of the owner. This manual and all its content are protected in accordance with the laws on copyright for texts, drawings and models, as well as in accordance with the law on trademarks. You agree not to duplicate the manual, in whole or in part, on media of any kind, without the written approval of Schneider Electric, other than for personal, non-commercial use as defined by the code of law. Furthermore, you agree not to create any hyperlinks to this manual or its contents. Schneider Electric does not grant the right or permission to use the manual or its content for personal and non-commercial use, with the sole exception of the non-exclusive right to view the current version of the manual and its content, at the viewer's own risk. All other rights reserved. Electrical equipment must be installed, operated, maintained and repaired by qualified personnel only. Schneider Electric accepts no liability for the consequences of using this material.

This Schneider Electric product is provided with certain open source software components (collectively, "OSS") developed by third parties. The OSS is licensed in accordance with the OSS license terms set forth on page 227.

Trademarks

- Linux® is the registered trademark of the Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.
- iTunes™ is a registered or unregistered trademark of the Apple Inc. in the USA and/or other countries.
- Google Chrome™ and Google Play™ are trademarks or registered or unregistered trademarks of the Google Inc. in the USA and/or other countries.
- Firefox® is a trademark or registered trademark of the Mozilla Corporation in the USA and/or other countries.
- Microsoft Windows® is a trademark or registered trademark of the Microsoft Corporation in the USA and/or other countries.
- Mac OS X® and Safari® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Apple Corporation in the USA and/or other countries.

Warnings

Read through the following instructions carefully and familiarise yourself with the device prior to installation, operation and maintenance. The warnings listed below can be found throughout the documentation and indicate potential risks and dangers, or specific information that clarifies or simplifies a procedure.



This symbol represents a safety warning. It indicates the potential risk of personal injury. Follow all safety instructions with this symbol to avoid serious injuries or death.



The addition of this symbol to “Danger” or “Warning” safety instructions indicates an electrical danger that could result in serious injuries if the instructions are not followed.

DANGER

DANGER indicates an imminently hazardous situation that will inevitably result in serious or fatal injury if the instructions are not observed.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a possible danger that could result in death or serious injuries if it is not avoided.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a possible danger that could result in minor injuries if it is not avoided.

NOTICE

NOTICE provides information about procedures that do not present any risk of physical injury.

Further information



The information provided must be complied with, otherwise program or data errors may occur.



Additional information is provided here to make your work easier.

Depictions in this document

Style and text features used

Text feature	Meaning
[F6]	Keys on the keyboard
[Ctrl] + [N]	Press both keyboard keys at the same time
Configurator	Software module (Start page) Click the button to open the software module.
Objects tab	Tab Click the tab to open its window. The window contains elements like lists, buttons, editors. Some windows are divided into several parts.
Objects list	List Click the tab (Objects) to display the list.
Event column	Column
Add new object button	Button Click the button to open a window, activate/deactivate a function or to display parameters and values.
Configurator → Objects tab → Add new objects button	Path
<i>Edit object</i>	Window
<i>Application (Decimal Format)</i>	Parameters
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>56 - Lighting</i>• <i>228 - Measurement</i>• <i>250 - User parameters</i>	Values
<i>Are you sure you want to delete all entries?</i>	System notifications
Choice: 0 s (instantaneous)/4 s ...	Pre-set values in the software are highlighted in bold in the tables.
<i>Ground Floor/lighting/room 1</i>	Composed address in the Name column in the Objects list
<i>0/56/1</i>	Composed address in the Group address column of the Objects list
Operation chapter	Cross-references
www.lua.org	URL address
SetRelayState(true)	LUA script
Project-Hostname_yyyy_mm_dd.hh.mm.tar.gz	File name

C-Bus operation

Requirements for safe operation

Knowledge of the basic rules for operating a computer and a browser such as Google Chrome, Safari or Firefox is a prerequisite for operation.

Knowledge of C-Bus operation is required. This includes using the C-Bus Toolkit software to select and commission C-Bus applications for export to a CGL file.

To use client-server communication with Modbus or BACnet, knowledge of these systems is required.

Special features of the C-Bus Toolkit

The C-Bus Toolkit Software enables configuration, exporting and importing of a C-Bus project.

Appropriate C-Bus Toolkit version

Use the current version of C-Bus Toolkit (1.15.x or higher). The included drivers are needed to access the Controller via USB-B.

Firmware

It is recommended to update the firmware to install the latest features, security updates and bug fixes.

<https://www.se.com/ww/en/search/5500nac2?multifilter=Firmware>

Table of contents

1	For your safety	15
1.1	Qualified personnel	15
2	General overview	16
2.1	Improvements	16
2.2	Access	17
2.3	Security Recommendations	17
2.4	Modules of the web server	18
2.5	Modules for the user	19
2.5.1	Configurator	20
	Objects	20
	Tag map	21
	Scheduler and trends	21
	Scenes	21
	Visualization	22
	User access	22
	Scripting	23
	CNI Functionality	23
2.5.2	Inputs and Outputs	23
	USB-A	24
	Ethernet	24
	RS-232	25
	RS-485	25
	Modbus	25
	BACnet	26
	DALI-2 Gateway	27
2.5.3	Advanced network functions	27
2.6	Limitations of the Controller	28
3	Getting started	29
3.1	Access to the Controller	29
3.1.1	Access via Ethernet and IP address	30
3.1.2	Access via USB Type B front connection and IP address	30
3.1.3	Access via hostname	30
3.2	Change password	31
3.3	Direct access to a module	31
3.4	Change IP settings of the Ethernet interface	31
3.5	Reset and Save Data	32
3.5.1	Save data during configuration	32
3.5.2	Backup and Restore	32
3.5.3	Backup	32
3.5.4	Restore	33
3.5.5	System configuration backup and restore	33
3.5.6	Reboot or hardware reset	33
3.5.7	Reset/Clean-up	34
3.5.8	Factory reset	34
3.6	Set Date and time	34
3.6.1	Date and time	35
3.6.2	NTP client/server	35
3.7	Updates and Firmware upgrade	37

3.7.1	Install updates	37
3.7.2	Upgrade firmware	37
	Firmware version	37
	Installation	38
3.8	Status of the Controller	38
3.8.1	Processor load	38
3.8.2	Memory	39
3.8.3	C-Bus Status	39
3.8.4	Partitions	40
3.8.5	Error logs	40
3.8.6	Alerts	41
4	C-Bus objects	42
4.1	Overview	42
4.2	Properties	42
4.3	Edit objects.	43
4.4	C-Bus settings	43
4.5	Controller as network interface	44
4.5.1	Import.	44
4.5.2	Sniffer function	44
4.5.3	Add new objects.	44
	Export from Toolkit into the Controller	44
	Import CGL file into the Controller	45
	Add new/additional objects via Bus sniffer function	46
4.6	Export from Controller to Toolkit.	46
4.7	Add new objects.	47
4.7.1	Lighting application	48
	Add a new application	48
	Add new group address.	48
4.7.2	Emergency and exit lighting application.	49
	DALI Gateway Unit settings.	50
	DALI Line settings	50
	DALI Object ID settings	50
4.7.3	Add new trigger group	51
	Select the trigger application	51
	Add trigger group	51
4.7.4	Add new enable group.	51
	Select the Enable application.	52
	Add network variable	52
4.7.5	Add new measurement device and channel	52
	Select the measurement application	52
4.7.6	Security application	53
	Example Project.	56
	Lua scripting example	69
4.7.7	Multi-Room Audio and Media Transport Control – Control C-Bus 74	
	MRA Objects	75
	MTC Objects	77
	Example project	79
	Media Link Group.	79
	Create MRA Related Objects.	81
	Create MTC related objects.	82
	Add an MRA/MTC user interface page/plan	84
	Create visualization elements for media living page/plan	84
	Add MRA Command Object.	86

	Adding visual elements for MTC objects	87
	Adding other visual elements	88
	Adding MTC command visual element	88
4.7.8	Error application	90
	Example project: Creating related error objects	92
	Preparing icons	95
	Prepare image	95
	Add an error user interface/page plan	95
	Creating visualization elements for status and error messages on error page/plan	96
	Add a floor plan as the background	100
	Adding object elements	101
	Adding virtual objects to the plan page	102
	Add text labels on the virtual device objects	103
4.7.9	Add Unit parameters	106
	Select the unit parameter application	106
	Add unit address	106
	Unit parameters	107
4.7.10	Additional parameters for all applications	107
4.8	Edit and test objects	107
4.8.1	Preparation for visualization	108
4.8.2	Control values	108
4.8.3	Additional options for editing	108
4.9	Sniffer function	109
4.9.1	Communication with C-Bus	109
4.9.2	Discover new objects	109
4.10	Object logs	109
4.10.1	Filter functions	109
4.10.2	Clear	110
4.10.3	Export all logs	110
4.10.4	High priority log	110
4.10.5	Log size	110
5	Tag map	111
5.1	Structure	111
5.1.1	Example of a tag map	111
5.1.2	Edit tag names	111
5.1.3	Add new tags	112
	Add application group level	112
6	Emergency and exit lighting	113
6.1	Overview of emergency and exit lighting	113
6.1.1	Emergency and exit lighting components	113
6.1.2	Typical emergency and exit lighting tasks	114
6.2	Accessing the emergency and exit lighting module	114
6.3	Configuring emergency and exit lighting	115
6.3.1	General emergency and exit lighting settings	115
	History settings	115
	General settings	115
6.3.2	Creating objects and groups	116
	Using SpaceLogic C-Bus Commission software	116
	Using the Network Automation Controller interface	116
6.3.3	Transferring objects and groups to the Network Automation Controller	116
6.3.4	Assigning emergency and exit lights to a group	117

6.3.5	Setting up emergency and exit lighting users	120
6.3.6	Setting up automatic testing for emergency and exit lighting groups	120
	Add a scheduler	120
	Add an event	120
	Assign a user to the scheduler	120
6.4	Routine emergency and exit lighting activities	121
6.4.1	Performing emergency and exit lighting tests	121
	Function test	121
	Duration test	122
	Stopping a test in progress	122
6.4.2	Emergency and exit lighting test reporting	122
	Accessing test reports	122
	Group test reports	122
	Individual test reports	124
	Emailing test reports	125
6.4.3	Managing an emergency and exit lighting scheduler	126
7	Schedulers	128
7.1	Access to the Scheduler	128
	7.1.1 Link to a specific scheduler	128
7.2	Schedulers and events	129
	7.2.1 Add a scheduler	129
	7.2.2 Add an event	130
	7.2.3 Add holidays	131
	Settings for day of week (visualization view)	131
	Settings for specific date (visualization view)	131
	7.2.4 Configuring from the visualization view of the Scheduler	132
8	Trend logs	133
8.1	Access to trend logs	133
8.2	Views of trend logs	134
	8.2.1 Available trend log views	134
	8.2.2 Add new trend log	135
	8.2.3 Configure trend logs	136
9	Scenes	137
9.1	Configuration	137
	9.1.1 Add scene	137
	9.1.2 Add components	138
	9.1.3 Add objects to a scene	138
	9.1.4 Set values to the objects of a scene	138
	9.1.5 Run scene	138
	9.1.6 Save live values	138
	9.1.7 Delete	138
	9.1.8 Duplicate	138
	9.1.9 Local and remote scene control	138
10	Visualization	140
10.1	Example of a visualization page for PC/Tablet	140
10.2	Example of a visualization page for Smartphones	141
	10.2.1 Steps of a visualization	142
10.3	Visualization configuration	143
	10.3.1 Visualization configuration parameters	143
	Usermode sidebar	144

Usermode view	144
Usermode page transition	144
Usermode auto/size upscaling	144
Usermode background colour	144
Usermode background image	144
Custom font	144
Use dark theme	144
Enable swipe gesture	144
Disable object click animation	144
Dim inactive visualization after	145
Dimming level	145
Show alerts in PC/Tablet	145
10.4 Visualization graphics	145
10.4.1 List of Icons	145
10.4.2 Icons and images	146
10.4.3 Fonts	146
10.4.4 Edit custom Cascading Style Sheets	146
10.5 Visualization structure	146
10.5.1 Layouts and Widgets	148
Add new Layout/Widget	148
Actions with levels including all plans or individual plans	148
Plan Size	149
Background images	149
Repeat background image	149
Widget position	149
10.5.2 Levels and Plans	150
Add new level	150
Add a second level or plan	150
Actions with levels including all plans or individual plans	150
Plan size in pixels	151
Layout (optional)	151
PC/Tablet visualization and Smartphone visualization	152
Background images (optional)	152
Repeat background image	152
10.6 Create visualization content	152
10.6.1 Structure panel	153
10.6.2 Additional tools and functions	153
Reorder Smart phone objects	153
Access to PC/Tablet visualization	153
Access to Smartphone Visualization	153
Visualization configuration	153
Size of a Plan/Layout/Widget	153
10.6.3 Visualization map	154
Editing functions on the visualization map	154
10.7 Plan editor	154
10.7.1 Actions in the plan editor	155
Add a new element	155
Modify an existing element	155
Save or cancel changes before changing to visualization mode	155
Element position	155
Element size	156
10.7.2 Main steps of editing	156
10.7.3 Objects	156
Overview of control types	157
Visualization parameters and control type	159

	Slider	160
	Shutter/Blind	161
	Global and local parameters	162
	Object element parameters	162
10.7.4	Links	163
	Parameter	163
	Custom name	164
	Hide background	164
	Active state icon	164
	Link with icons	164
	Link as transparent area	164
10.7.5	Text label	164
	Parameters	165
10.7.6	Image	165
	Parameters	165
	Image source	165
	Image size	166
	External link (optional)	166
10.7.7	Frame	166
10.7.8	Gauge	167
	Parameters	167
10.7.9	Camera	167
	Parameters	168
10.7.10	Graph	168
	Parameters	169

11 Scripting170

11.1	Prepare a script	170
	11.1.1 Event-based scripts	171
	11.1.2 Resident scripts	171
	11.1.3 Scheduled scripts	172
	11.1.4 Start up script	172
	Example	172
	Backup and restore	172
11.2	Script editor	173
	11.2.1 Editor	173
	11.2.2 Helpers	174
	11.2.3 Lists	175
	11.2.4 Find and replace	175
	11.2.5 Logs for testing	176
	Function	176
	Options	177
	11.2.6 Error logs	177
	11.2.7 Finish the script	177
11.3	User libraries	178
	11.3.1 Add and edit a library	178
	11.3.2 Backup and restore libraries	179
11.4	Common functions	179
	11.4.1 E-mail	179
	Insert individual e-mail data	179
	11.4.2 Sending an e-mail using a script	180
	11.4.3 Backup and restore common functions	181
11.5	Tools	181
	11.5.1 Backup and restore scripts	181
	Backup	181

Restore	181
11.5.2 Print script listing	181
11.5.3 Edit custom Java script	181
11.5.4 Show logs window	181
11.6 Alerts	181
11.6.1 Alert command in a script	182
Show alerts in PC/Tablet	182
Show an alert as a message in PC/Tablet	182

12 User access183

12.1 Add and edit user	184
12.2 User parameters	185
12.3 Assigning schedulers to a user	186
12.4 Assigning emergency lighting groups to a user	186
12.5 User access settings	187

13 Inputs and Outputs188

13.1 Technical data	188
13.2 Configuration of relay output	188
13.2.1 Commands in the Helpers tab	189
Set relay state	189
Get relay state	189
13.3 Configuration of LED output	189
13.3.1 Commands in the Helpers tab	190
13.4 Reading of digital input	191
13.4.1 States of potential free contact	191
13.4.2 States of monitored input	191
Commands in the Helpers tab	192
Read digital input	192
Read digital input range	192
Read digital input text representation	192
13.5 USB-A	193
13.5.1 USB flash drive configuration commands	193
13.5.2 Mounting	193
13.6 RS-232	195
13.6.1 Configuration commands	196
13.7 RS-485	197
13.7.1 Configuration commands	198
13.7.2 Open connection	198
13.8 Modbus	199
13.8.1 Access via RS-485	199
Slaves	199
Easy configuration with profiles	200
Configuration with scripts	200
13.8.2 Access via Ethernet	200
13.8.3 Configure preinstalled profiles	201
List of preinstalled Modbus profiles	201
13.8.4 Modbus RTU Settings	202
RTU (serial) enabled	203
Port	203
Baud rate	203
Parity	203
Duplex	203
Reset to defaults	203

13.8.5	Modbus RTU scan	203
13.8.6	Add Modbus device	203
13.8.7	Add Objects	204
13.8.8	Modbus Mapping	204
13.8.9	RTU read test	205
13.8.10	Add and edit profiles	205
	Mapping parameters	206
	Export profiles	207
	Import profiles	207
	Delete profiles	207
13.9	Modbus settings using scripts	207
13.9.1	Function Codes and corresponding Master Functions	208
	FC#01 Read Coils	208
	FC#02 Read Discrete Inputs	209
	FC#03 Read Holding Registers	209
	FC#04 Read Input Registers	209
	FC#05 Write Single Coil	210
	FC#06 Write Single Register	210
	FC#0F Write Multiple Coils	210
	FC#0F Write Multiple Registers	210
	Exception codes	210
13.9.2	Modbus RTU configuration commands	212
13.9.3	Modbus master functions	214
13.9.4	Modbus slave functions	215
	Set Modbus mapping of slave device	215
14	BACnet	216
14.1	List of all BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs) supported	216
	14.1.1 BACnet Object Types Supported	216
	14.1.2 Data Link Layer Options	216
14.2	Schneider Electric Building Management System	217
	Emergency and exit light testing using building management software	217
14.3	Object export	218
14.4	BACnet configuration	219
	14.4.1 BACnet settings	219
	14.4.2 BACnet objects	220
	14.4.3 BACnet COV setting	220
15	Advanced network functions	221
15.1	Network Settings	221
	15.1.1 Interfaces	221
	15.1.2 Routes	221
	eth0 network adapter	221
	usb0 network adapter	221
15.2	Network utilities	222
15.3	Access via HTTP, HTTPS or VPN	222
	15.3.1 HTTP or HTTPS	222
	15.3.2 VPN	223
	15.3.3 HTTP Server	223
	15.3.4 HTTP SSL certificate	223
15.4	Remote services	224

15.4.1 Parameters	224
15.4.2 Set value	224
15.5 FTP server	224
15.5.1 Parameters	225
Require encryption (FTPS)	225
Password	225
15.6 Remote diagnostic	226

16 Open source license information 227

16.1 GNU General Public License v.2	227
16.1.1 Preamble	228
16.1.2 GNU General Public License	229
16.1.3 No Warranty	231
16.1.4 End of Terms and Conditions	232
16.2 GNU Lesser General Public License v.2.1	233
16.2.1 Preamble	233
16.2.2 Terms and Conditions for copying and distribution and modification	235
16.2.3 No Warranty	239
16.2.4 End of Terms and Conditions	239
16.3 MIT license	240
16.4 MIT-like license	240
16.5 BSD-3 license	241
16.6 BSD-2 license	242
16.7 BSD-2-like license	242
16.8 Open source software components (1)	243
16.9 LIBPNG license	243
16.10 Open source software components (2)	245
16.11 Open source software components (3)	247
16.12 BSD	248
License Terms	248

1 For your safety



DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- It is illegal for persons other than an appropriately licensed electrical contractors or other persons authorised by legislation to work on the fixed wiring of any electrical installation.
- To comply with all safety standards, the product must be used only for the purpose described in this instruction and must be installed in accordance with the wiring rules and regulation in the location where it is installed.
- There are no user serviceable parts inside the product.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.



CAUTION

EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD

- Install the device according to instructions in the printed Quick Start Guide and in this document.
- Pay attention to the specifications and wiring diagrams related to the installation.
- Do not use this product for any other purpose than specified in the printed Quick Start Guide and in this instruction.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in minor injuries or equipment damage.

1.1 Qualified personnel

This document is aimed at personnel responsible for setting up, installing, commissioning and operating the device and the system in which it is installed. Personnel must possess basic knowledge in the following areas:

- Connection to installation networks
- Connecting several electrical devices
- Laying electric cables
- Connecting and establishing C-Bus networks and other used Building Management System (BMS) like BACnet or Modbus
- Commissioning C-Bus installations and other used BMS.

Detailed expertise gained by means of training in the C-Bus system and other used BMS is a prerequisite.

2 General overview

This document describes the programming interface for the Controller. The software programming interface is embedded in the Controller and requires a web browser. Pre-programming and configuration cannot be performed without a Controller.

Access the embedded web server via the Ethernet or USB type B connections on the Controller (see *Getting started* on page 29).

2.1 Improvements

Scheduler Enhancement	See <i>Schedulers and events</i> on page 129
User Manual updates on device security best practices	See <i>Security Recommendations</i> on page 18 See <i>Updates and Firmware upgrade</i> on page 37 See <i>Access via HTTP, HTTPS or VPN</i> on page 222
Force a user to change default password very first time when they login to Configurator.	See <i>Access</i> on page 17
Login lockout	See <i>Access via HTTP, HTTPS or VPN</i> on page 222 See <i>FTP server</i> on page 224
Support for Emergency & Exit Lighting (5500NAC2 only)	See <i>Emergency and exit lighting</i> on page 113
Support for Modbus devices has been increased to max. 10 for the Application Controller.	See <i>Modbus</i> on page 25 and <i>Limitations of the Controller</i> on page 28
The following options have been added for HTTP port disable/redirect (HTTPS mode): <ul style="list-style-type: none">• HTTP and HTTPS enabled• HTTPS only, redirect HTTP to HTTPS• HTTPS only, HTTP port disabled.	See <i>HTTP Server</i> on page 223.
Added an option to require encryption for FTP (FTPS).	See <i>Require encryption (FTPS)</i> on page 225.
Added the ability to backup and restore system configuration.	See <i>System configuration backup and restore</i> on page 33.
Included a wildcard filter for object names in object logs.	See <i>Filter functions</i> on page 109.
In the Scene tab, added the ability to sort a column by clicking the column heading.	See <i>Scenes</i> on page 21.
Added the ability to change the sort order of Schedulers, Trend Logs and Vis. Structure using drag & drop.	See <i>Schedulers and events</i> on page 129, <i>Configure trend logs</i> on page 136 and <i>Levels and Plans</i> on page 150.
In Vis. Graphics, when searching for icons and images/backgrounds you can filter by name to find content.	See <i>List of Icons</i> on page 145.
In Configurator > Visualization, you can snap elements to the visualization grid using a button in the Plan Editor.	See <i>Element position</i> on page 155.
Scenes tab - status object for value.	See <i>"9 Scenes"</i> on page 137
In the Camera object, added a Remote source URL field so that the remote camera stream is displayed if the client IP is from a different sub-network than the server.	See <i>Camera</i> on page 167.
Improved complexity requirement for passwords, including support for diacritic marks, Greek and Cyrillic characters.	See <i>Access</i> on page 17, <i>User parameters</i> on page 185 and <i>Password</i> on page 225.

Introduce tool tips to improve readability of interface labels.	Where a interface label is partially obscured, hold the mouse cursor over the label to see the entire text.
Added scalable size control element in visualization (Only for circular slider).	See <i>Circular Slider</i> in <i>Overview of control types</i> on page 157.
The minimum icon size for has been changed from 10 px to 5 px.	—
New Category option for separation of Events in Schedulers & Trends.	See <i>Add a scheduler</i> on page 129 and <i>Add new trend log</i> on page 135.
Improved date picker in Trend exports.	—
“Emergency & Exit Lighting” page made visible in Frame and Link.	See <i>Parameters</i> in <i>Links</i> on page 163 and <i>Frame</i> on page 166.
Added new pre-installed Modbus profiles.	See <i>List of preinstalled Modbus profiles</i> on page 201.
Bug fixes	
EcoStruxure Building Operation software displays application tagnames in good readable format.	—
PulseCbusLevel() in NAC/AC script does alter CBus Object held in database according to actual pulse programmed.	—
User manual updated to provide the Correct URL for remote services.	See <i>Set value</i> on page 224.



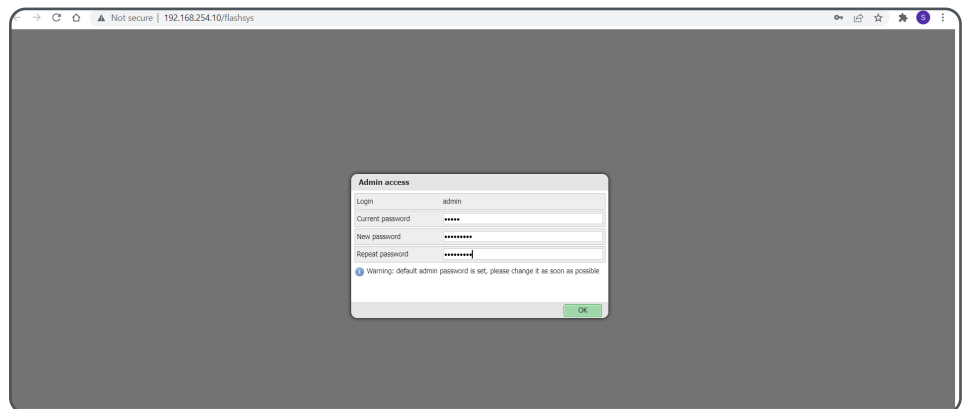
Clear the browser cache after updating the Controller firmware.

2.2 Access

Access the embedded web server via the Ethernet or USB type B connections on the Controller. The chapter *Getting started* on page 29 provides information about administrator access, saving data, setting date and time, firmware upgrade and monitoring the Controller.

The default IP address for the ethernet connection is **192.168.0.10**. The default IP address for the USB type B connection is **192.168.254.10**. The administrator username is *admin* and the default password is *admin*.

The admin is forced to change the default password if it is not already changed while an admin attempts a login first time.



New password must be at least 8 characters long and contain at least 1 uppercase character, 1 lowercase character and 1 digit. See *Change password* on page 31

2.3 Security Recommendations

- Network security must be set up at the appropriate level. Network Automation Controller/ Application Controller should be part of a secure network with limited access. In case of connection to the Internet, it is strictly recommended to use VPN and HTTPS.
- Use secure protocol access HTTPS://IP:Port during any IP communication.
- Security method is determined by the ability of other network elements (firewall, protection against viruses and malware threats).
- It is strictly recommended to store the files containing your backups in a safe place without access of unauthorized persons.
- Device should be placed in LOCKED cabinet with restricted access.

Note : In case you find cyber security incidents or vulnerabilities, please contact us through this page:

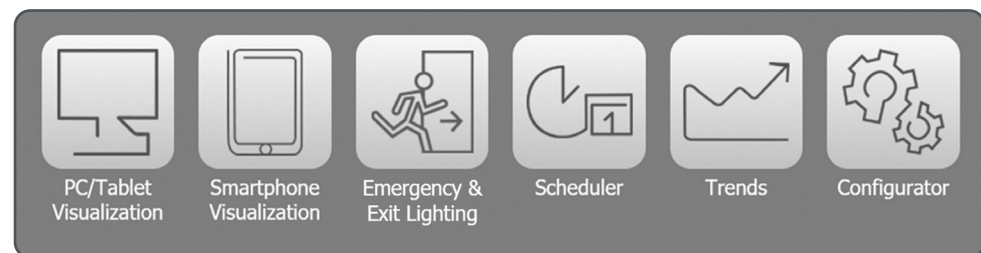
<https://www.se.com/ww/en/work/support/cybersecurity/security-notifications.jsp>

2.4 Modules of the web server

The following modules of the web server can be accessed from the **Start** page:

- PC/Tablet Visualization: user module
- Smartphone Visualization: user module
- Emergency & Exit Lighting: user module (5500NAC2 only)
- Scheduler: user module
- Trends: user module
- Configurator.

The following screen shot shows the buttons of the **Start** page:



Administrators can configure the five user modules via the Configurator. Once visualization pages, emergency & exit lighting, schedulers or trend logs have been configured, the result can easily be viewed by users of the system.

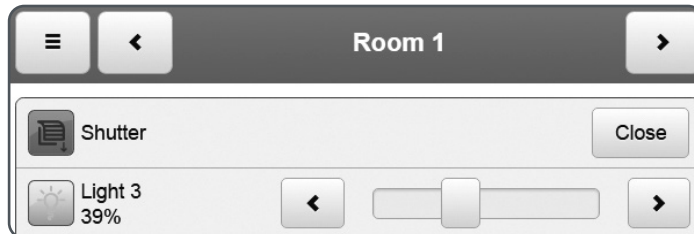
2.5 Modules for the user

The following images show examples of pages for each user module.

Page in the *PC/Tablet Visualization* user module:



Page in the *Smartphone Visualization* user module:



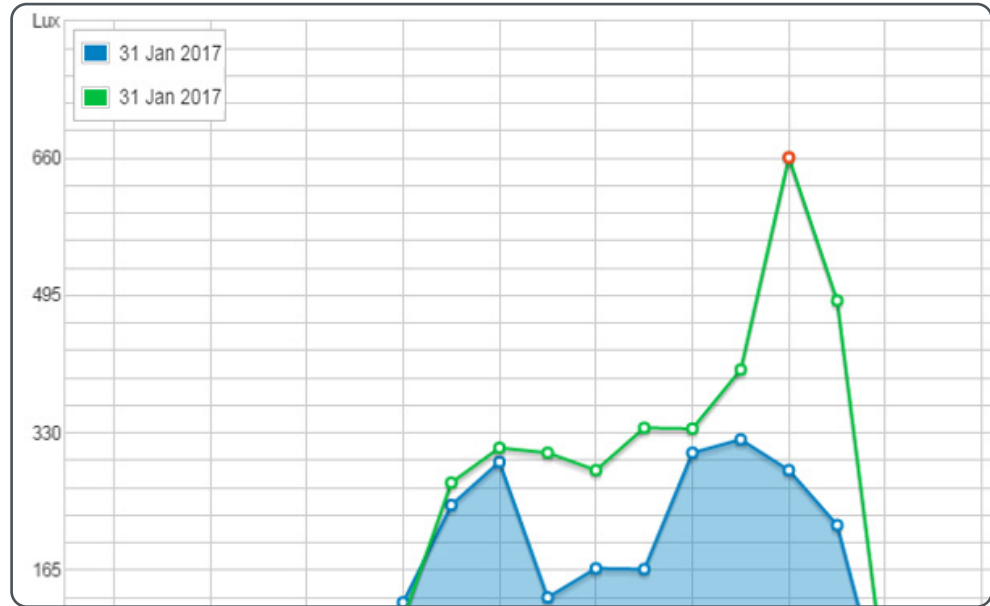
Page in the *Emergency & Exit Lighting* user module:

Emergency and Exit Lighting					
Name	Set Mode	Current Mode	Test Status		
ELTS_LINE_A	Normal (Stop Test)	Function Test	In Progress	Report	
ELT_LAB_05	Duration Test	Duration Test	In Progress (0%)	Report	
ELT_LAB_07	Function Test	Function Test	In Progress	Report	
ELTS_LINE_B	Normal (Stop Test)	Normal	Fail	Report	
dummy	Normal (Stop Test)	Normal	Communication Loss	Report	
ELT_LAB_LB_05	Normal (Stop Test)	Normal	Pass	Report	

Page in the *Scheduler* user module:

Light 3					
Light 1	Status: active 1 January – 31 December <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Run at</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Light evening On</td> <td>18:00</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Run at	Light evening On	18:00
Name		Run at			
Light evening On		18:00			
Light 3					
Holidays					

Page in the **Trends** user module:

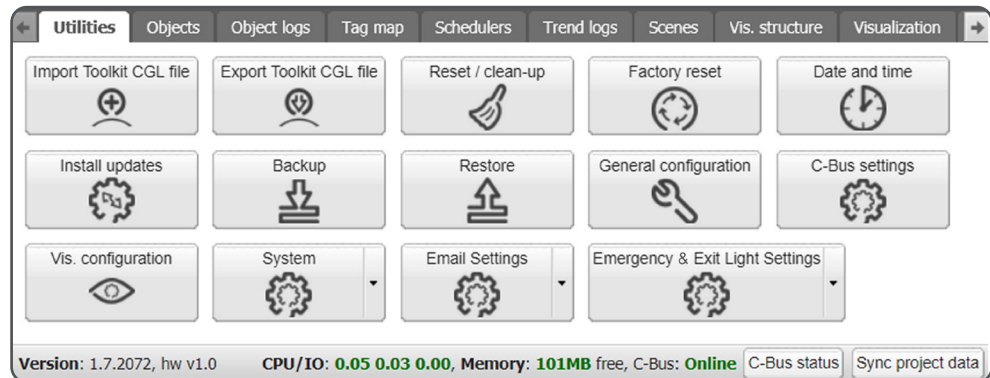


2.5.1 Configurator

Access the configurator from the **Start** page. Tabs on the configurator page provide access to different aspects of configuration. The configurator main page can:

- Access general and visualization configuration
- Open the System page to access network, update and reset functions, and status information.

Utilities tab on the **Configurator** page:



Objects

Objects are the basis of all communication via the Controller and represent different C-Bus applications for sending and receiving values. Objects can also be used for visualization, scripting, exchange with BACnet IP or Modbus and the control of outputs and inputs. The chapter *C-Bus objects* on page 42 describes different applications, how to add and edit objects and how to exchange applications configured with the C-Bus Toolkit.

Objects are used in the following steps of configuration.

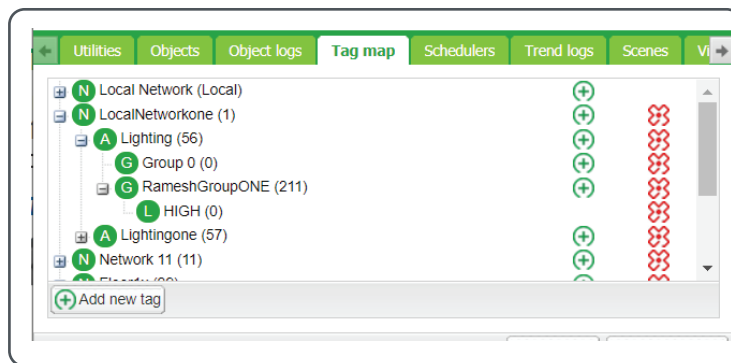
Objects tab with **Object** list on with 2 C-Bus objects:

Name	Group address	Event sc...	Current value
Local/Measurement/Temperature/2	0/228/25/2		24 °C
Local/Lighting/Room 2	0/56/2		255 - 100%

Tag map

In addition to the objects list, a tag map is available (see *Tag map* on page 111). In this map, object names (tags) can be edited and used in other steps of configuration.

Tag map with network, application, group and level:



Scheduler and trends

Schedulers provide control of different building functions based on date and time (see *Schedulers* on page 128). Trend logs (data logging) store the selected data and compare that data over different time periods (see *Trend logs* on page 133).

Objects can be added in the configurator. Users can access schedulers or trends from the **Start** page or from a visualization. (Images of visualization pages are shown on page 18.)

Trend logs tab with two objects for logging:

Name	Object	Log type	Decimal p...	Trend res...	Resolutio...
Energy	Local/Measure...	Counter	2	1 hour	180 days
Voltage	Local/255/254...	Absolute value	2	1 hour	180 days

Scenes

Scenes allows changes to multiple room functions at the touch of a button. For example, use a scene to dim the room lighting to a specific value, move the blinds into the desired position and switch on the power outlets.

Scenes configured in the Controller can be controlled from a visualization page, the scheduler, or from other C-Bus devices such as push buttons.

The basis of scene communication is a *trigger group* (see *Add new trigger group* on page 51). The chapter *Scenes* on page 137 describes the configuration of scenes and all components (objects) linked with those scenes.

When configuring scenes on a visualization page or schedulers, add a trigger group object (*Objects* on page 156 and *Schedulers and events* on page 129).

Scenes tab with one trigger group and three scenes:

ID	Name	Group address	Action selector	Keywords
1	Video	Local/Scenes/Trigger Group 1 (0/202/1)	Video (1)	Video
2	Day	Local/Scenes/Trigger Group 1 (0/202/1)	Day (2 - 1%)	Day
3	Night	Local/Scenes/Trigger Group 1 (0/202/1)	Night (3)	Night



Sort scenes by property: Move your mouse cursor over a column header. If the pointer turns to a hand, you can click the column header to sort the scenes by that property.

Visualization

The Controller provides an embedded *Smartphone* and *PC/Tablet* visualization (see *Modules of the web server* on page 18).

The elements of a visualization, such as objects, can be configured on visualization plans (pages) that can be accessed on both visualization modules. The **Smartphone Visualization** provides a list with control objects and links. The **PC/Tablet Visualization** provides additional elements such as images and graphs.

The chapter *Visualization* on page 140 describes the main steps of configuration, how to create a structure, how to use the plan editor and how to configure different elements such as control types for C-Bus applications.

Visualization tab with plan editor and structure:

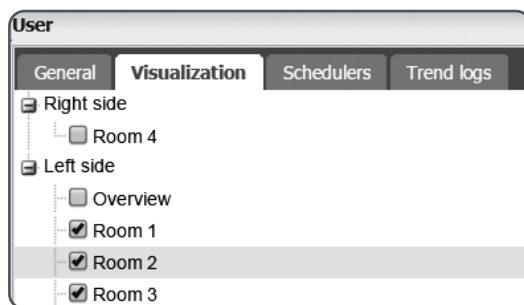


User access

The Controller is designed for a maximum of 50 users for visualization. The Application Controller is limited to a maximum of 8 users.

The chapter *User access* on page 183 describes how to configure individual access rights. Access can be given without restriction for all users, with a common PIN code for all users, or with individual user logins. Different user access levels can be configured for visualization pages, emergency and exit lighting, schedulers and trends.

User window with selection of pages for a user (opened on the **User Access** tab):

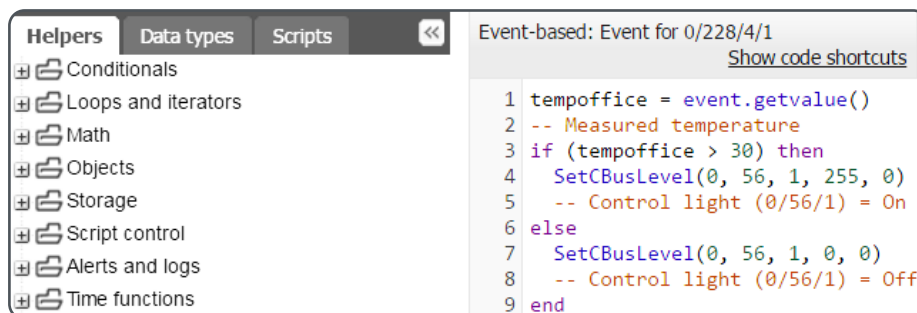


Scripting

A *script* is a small, non-compiled program written in the scripting language *LUA*. Event-based scripts are commonly used. In this case, define conditions and actions to perform when the object values meet certain criteria.

The chapter *Scripting* on page 170 provides an introduction to different types of scripts, script editor usage, the script commands available in the helpers tab, common functions like sending emails, tools and alerts. Find script examples in *Inputs and Outputs* on page 188 and *Modbus settings using scripts* on page 207.

Script editor with a script example (opened from a list on the **Scripting** tab):



CNI Functionality

CNI is enabled by default on port 10001. When enabled, the Controller can act as a C-Bus network interface for commissioning and maintenance.

The CNI functionality in the Controller can be enabled/disabled and the port can be changed, if desired, through the Controller's configuration page.

In toolkit configure connection details for each C-Bus network are as follows:

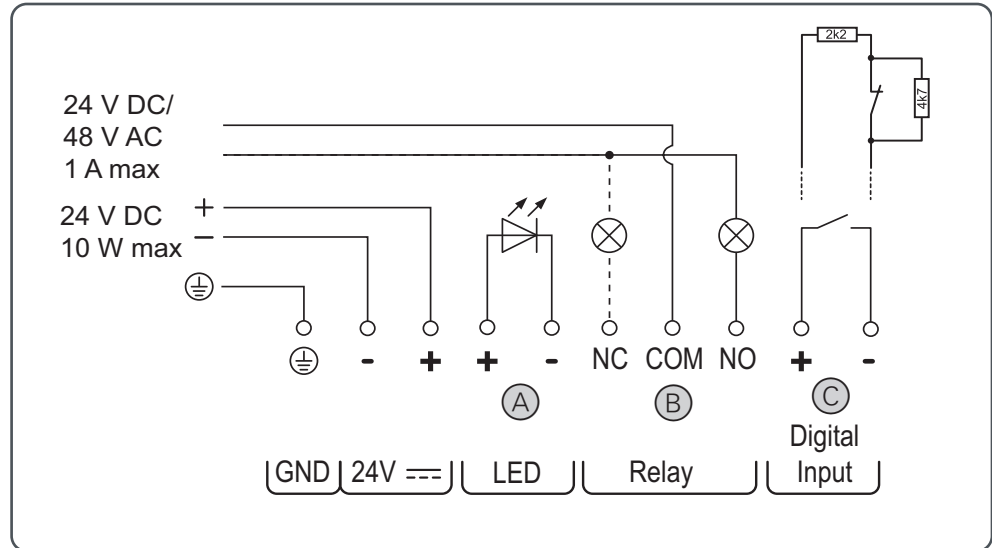
- Type: CNI
- Address: IP address
- The default IP address of the Controller is 192.168.0.10 (or 192.168.254.10 if connected using the USB-B interface)
- Port: 10001.

2.5.2 Inputs and Outputs

The Controller is equipped with a LED driver output, a relay output and a digital input. The chapter *Inputs and Outputs* on page 188 describes how to control these interfaces via scripts.

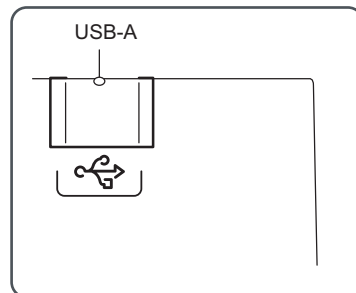
The LED and relay output can be controlled via C-Bus applications. The digital input of the Controller is compatible with either a potential-free contact or a monitored cable using End of Line Resistance.

LED driver output (A), relay output (B) and digital input (C):



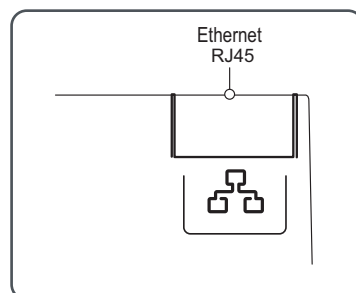
USB-A

A USB type A connector in the Controller provides connection with USB expansion devices (see *USB-A* on page 193). FAT and FAT32 file system formatted flash drives can be attached. Data transmission is performed via script configuration commands.



Ethernet

The Controller includes an RJ45 interface for 10/100 Base-T UTP Ethernet. Use the Ethernet connection to integrate IP devices (see *Camera* on page 167), web services (see *NTP client/server* on page 35) and additional building management functions (see *Modbus* on page 199 and *BACnet* on page 216). C-bus networks configured with the C-Bus Toolkit software can be commissioned and maintained in online mode via the configured Ethernet connection of the Controller (on page 44).

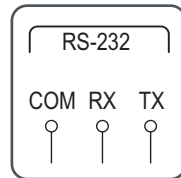


RS-232

The RS-232 serial interface is one of the most widely used communication standards for data transmission between two devices over short distances.

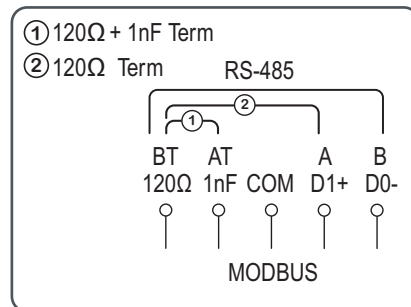
Interaction with other equipment is possible via the isolated RS-232 interface in the Controller (see *RS-232* on page 195). The script configuration commands are listed in the **Helpers** tab of the script editor.

RS-232 interface connections: Common, Receive, Transmit.



RS-485

The Controller has an isolated RS-485 interface, which can be used for serial data transmission between two or more devices (see *RS-485* on page 197).



Modbus

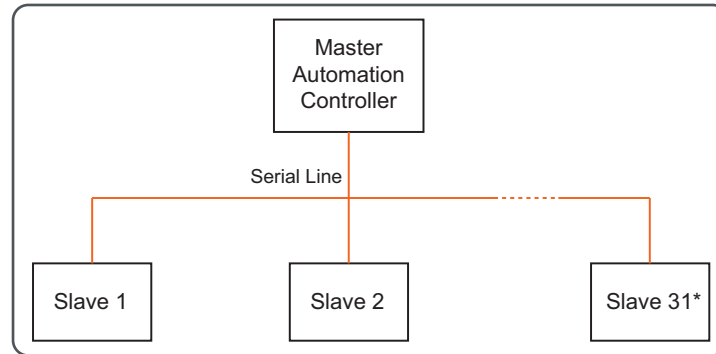
Modbus is an open standard for client/server communication. The client sends a request message and the addressed device (the server) sends a response message. The values of a server are saved in registers which can be accessed by the client. In Modbus *RTU mode*, the **client** is usually referred to as the **master** and the **server** as the **slave**.

The Controller supports Modbus RTU serial communication via the RS-485 interface and Modbus TCP communication via the RJ45 Ethernet interface. It has been tested to conform to Modbus over serial line standards at the Modbus-SL Interoperability test lab in Marktheidenfeld.

By Modbus specification a serial line is limited to 31 slaves. The Network Automation Controller is not limited but designed for 31 slaves. The Application Controller is limited to a maximum of 10 Modbus slaves.

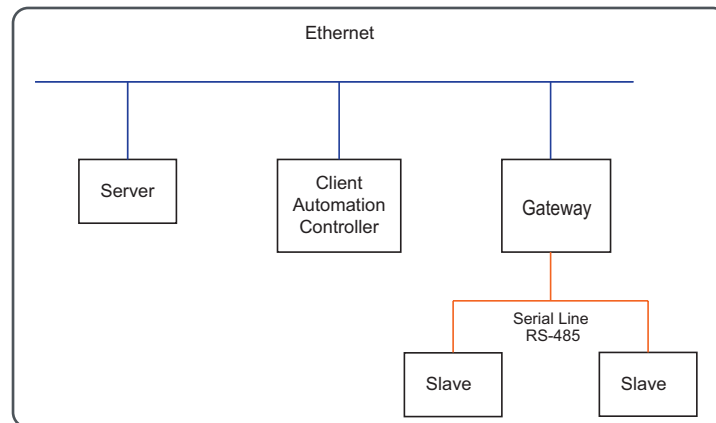
Using the preinstalled profiles, Modbus devices can be easily configured (see *Configure preinstalled profiles* on page 201). The devices are displayed in a list, with links to Modbus registers with objects of the C-Bus application *250 - User Parameter*.

Principle of Modbus RTU communication with the Controller:



* By Modbus specification a serial line is limited to 31 slaves.

Principle of Modbus TCP communication with the Controller:



BACnet

BACnet is designed to allow communication with building automation and control systems for applications such as heating, ventilation, air conditioning control, lighting control, access control, fire detection systems and their associated equipment. The BACnet protocol provides exchange information for building automation devices, regardless of the particular building service they perform.

The Controller supports the BACnet IP format using the RJ45 Ethernet connector.

The Controller can act only as a BACnet server (not as a client). The Controller serves data which can be read by BACnet client devices (such as Buildings Management Systems) and BACnet client devices can write data to the server.

The Controller has been certified by BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) as a BACnet Application Specific Controller (B – ASC).

The chapter *BACnet* on page 216 describes how to configure the Controller as a BACnet server. This is done by activating the object export function and configuring BACnet communication.

The Network Controller is designed for a maximum of 2000 BACnet data points. The Application Controller is limited to a maximum of 50 BACnet data points.

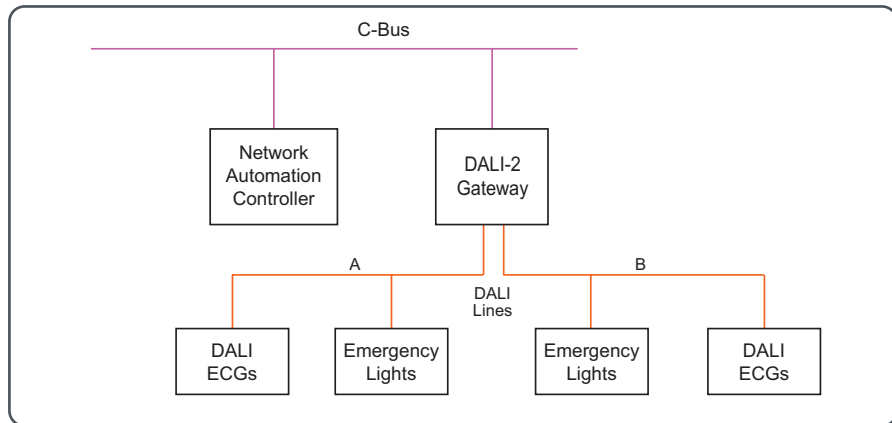
Objects tab with objects available for BACnet selected in the **Export** column:

Name	Group address	Event	Current value	Log	Export
Local/255/254/Voltage	0/255/254/3		32.7 V	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Local/User Parameter/Main meter	0/250/2		10.500 A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Local/Measurement/Temp Room1/2	0/228/25/2		24 °C	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Local/Measurement/Temp Room2/1	0/228/4/1		32 °C	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

DALI-2 Gateway

For emergency and exit lighting, a DALI-2 Gateway must be included in the C-Bus network. Emergency lights (and other DALI ECGs) are connected to the gateway DALI lines. The gateway acts as the interface between the Network Automation Controller and DALI devices.

The DALI-2 Gateway can be configured using SpaceLogic C-Bus Commission software. Refer to the DALI-2 Gateway User Manual.



2.5.3 Advanced network functions

The chapter *Advanced network functions* on page 221 describes network settings, utilities and remote functions.

Network utilities (opened in the **Services** tab of the **System** page):

Network utilities

Ping | **Traceroute**

IP / Hostname: 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org

```

PING 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org (131.188.3.221): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=0 ttl=54 time=100.509 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=1 ttl=54 time=98.653 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=2 ttl=54 time=99.614 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=3 ttl=54 time=93.555 ms

--- 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 93.555/98.082/100.509 ms
  
```

2.6 Limitations of the Controller

SpaceLogic C-Bus Network Automation Controller 5500NAC2

The Network Automation Controller is designed for a maximum of:

- Objects (C-Bus and internal): 4000*
- Users for visualization: 50*
- Modbus devices: 31*
- BACnet data points: 2000*.

* Limits not physical but dependent on maximum CPU load.

For emergency and exit lighting, the following limitations apply (per Network Automation Controller):

- C-Bus DALI-2 Gateways: max. 8
- Emergency and exit lights: max. 300, which can be split as follows:
 - **Across max. 8 C-Bus DALI-2 Gateways:** 30% of lights can be emergency lighting devices
 - **Within 3 C-Bus DALI-2 Gateways:** 100% of lights can be emergency lighting devices (i.e. max. 64 devices on each DALI line).
- Emergency and exit lighting groups: max. 64
- Emergency and exit lights per group: max. 64.

There is also a DALI-2 Gateway limit of 64 emergency and exit lights per DALI line (total on all DALI lines not to exceed the Network Automation Controller limit of 300 emergency and exit lights).

SpaceLogic C-Bus Application Controller 5500AC2

The Application Controller is designed for a maximum of:

- Objects (C-Bus and internal): 4000*
- Users for visualization: 8
- Modbus devices: 10
- BACnet data points: 50

* Limits not physical but dependent on maximum CPU load.

Processor load, memory and status

The bottom bar of the [Configurator](#) page displays information about the processor load, the used memory and the status of C-Bus. For more detailed information about processor load, used memory and partitions, see *Status of the Controller* on page 38.

3 Getting started

The Controller is programmed via its embedded web server. Access the web server using a Google Chrome, Safari or Firefox web browser. When accessing the web server, the **Start** page is displayed. From the **Start** page, access the configurator and the following user modules:

- PC/Tablet Visualization
- Smartphone Visualization
- Emergency & Exit Lighting (5500NAC2 only)
- Scheduler
- Trends.

As Administrator, configure the modules via the configurator and control user access to these five modules (see *User access* on page 183).

The following screen shot shows the buttons of the **Start** page:



Tabs on the configurator page give access to the configuration options. From the main page of the configurator, allows access to general and visualization configuration as well as the system page. From the system page, access network, update and reset functions, and status information.

3.1 Access to the Controller

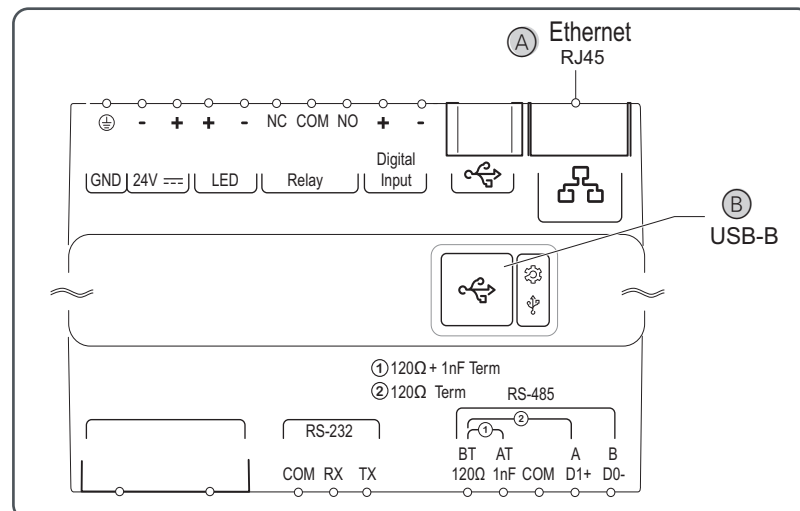
Access the embedded web server of the Controller using a web browser.



Use either Google Chrome, Safari or Firefox. No other browser is supported.

Physical connection between the Controller and the PC hosting the browser can be established via either:

- Ⓐ Ethernet connection, or
- Ⓑ USB Type B connection.



3.1.1 Access via Ethernet and IP address

Preconditions

- The Controller must be supplied with an external 24 V DC regulated power supply (10 W min.) or USB (5 V, 500 mA).
- The default IP address is: 192.168.0.10.

Steps

- ① Connect an Ethernet cable to the PC.
- ② Change the IP address of the computer to the same range, e.g. 192.168.0.9; subnet mask 255.255.255.0.
- ③ Start Google Chrome, Safari or Firefox and go to 192.168.0.10.
- ④ Click the **Configurator** button.
- ⑤ Enter the username. The default username is: `admin`.
- ⑥ Enter the password. The default password is: `admin`.

3.1.2 Access via USB Type B front connection and IP address

Preconditions

- The Controller must be supplied with an external 24 V DC regulated power supply (10 W min.) or USB (5 V, 500 mA).
- The IP address is 192.168.254.10.
- USB drivers are included with the latest C-Bus Toolkit installation. Use the most recent version (1.15 or higher) and install the full package including USB drivers.



Prior to first installation, accept installation of USB drivers for the Controller.

Steps

- ① Connect the USB-B port on the Controller to a USB port on the PC. The PC is given a DHCP IP address in the range of 192.168.254.1 – 192.168.254.9.
- ② Start Google Chrome, Safari or Firefox and go to 192.168.254.10.
- ③ Click the **Configurator** button.
- ④ Enter the user name. The default user name is: `admin`.
- ⑤ Enter the password. The default password is: `admin`.

The USB connection to the network adaptor is independent of the Ethernet connection and so both can be used concurrently.

3.1.3 Access via hostname

Access via *hostname* is possible when a network router is present and the Controller is properly configured. See *Change IP settings of the Ethernet interface* on page 31.

The default hostname is the product part number:

- 5500NAC2 for the Network Automation Controller
- 5500AC2 for the Application Controller.

Access example: `http://5500NAC2.local`

The hostname is used for identification of the Controller in installation as well as in files names (e.g. backup).

Change the hostname on the *System* page.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **System** button → **System** tab → **Hostname**.

3.2 Change password

Change the default password on the *System* page.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **System** button → **System** tab → **Admin Access**

3.3 Direct access to a module

Access a module directly from the browser by using the module's address.

Table 1: Module addresses

Page/Module	Address (with default IP address)
PC/Tablet Visualization	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis
Smartphone/Visualization	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis/touch
Emergency & Exit Lighting (5500NAC2)	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis/emergencyexitlight
Scheduler	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis/schedulers
Trends	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis/trends
Start page	http://192.168.0.10/home
Configurator	http://192.168.0.10/scada-main

When accessing a module in this way, provide the username and password. Settings for users are described in the chapter *User access* on page 183.

3.4 Change IP settings of the Ethernet interface

Change the IP settings on the *System* page.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **System** button → **Network** tab → **Interfaces** → **IP address**.

Click the IP address to open the window *Interface eth0*.

Table 2: IP settings

Protocol	Static IP Static IP address (default is 192.168.0.10). DHCP DHCP protocol used to get IP configuration, e.g. from a router or gateway with DHCP server.
IP address	Enter a static IP address.
Network mask	Network mask (default is 255.255.255.0).
Gateway IP	IP address of the router or gateway.
DNS server 1	Primary DNS server IP address (resolution of address names). In general set the IP address of the network router.
DNS server 2	Secondary DNS server IP address. Visit public-dns.info for a list of public DNS servers.
MTU	Maximum transmission unit: The largest size of the packet which can be passed in the communication protocol (default is 1500).



Add new IP settings to personal documentation before applying the changes. When selecting the DHCP, note the MAC address of the network interface. This helps to identify the IP address set by the DHCP server. It is recommended to test the access via hostname (on page 30) before changing the IP settings.

- With USB-B, it provides independent local access to the Controller. The linked IP address can not be changed from its default (192.168.254.10).
- When changes are made, the **Apply changes** button appears in the top-right corner of the window (see Ⓐ in the next figure). Click this button to apply the changes—the Controller will automatically reboot. Once the reboot process is complete, use the new IP address to access the Controller.

System Network Services Status Help Apply changes ^(A)						
Interfaces (A)						
Name	MAC address	IP address	MTU	TX Bytes	RX Bytes	Errors
eth0	00:17:DD:09:00:0B ^(B)	192.168.0.10 ^(C)	1500	0 B	0 B	0 / 0

- (A) **Apply changes** button
- (B) MAC address
- (C) IP address.

3.5 Reset and Save Data

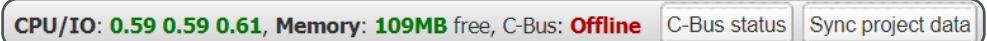
This section describes how the the Controller can be reset, and data backed-up and restored.

3.5.1 Save data during configuration

To save data during configuration:

Path: **Configurator** → **Sync project data** button.

Click the **Sync project data** button on the bottom bar of the configurator:



The project will immediately synchronise to the microSD card. If power is removed from the Controller without pressing this button, any configuration change may be lost.

3.5.2 Backup and Restore

Objects, trends, logs, scripts, icons, images, backgrounds, and visualizations are backed up.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab.

Backup regularly and before the following functions are executed:

- Factory reset
- Clean-up selected functions
- Installation of updates
- Firmware update.

Default file name

Project-Hostname_ yyyy_mm_dd.-hh.mm.tar.gz

The file name includes the device time and date when the backup is made. The file name can be changed as desired (*.tar.gz).

3.5.3 Backup

Click the **Backup** button.



The following settings are not backed up:

- System configuration (separate function—see *System configuration backup and restore* on page 33)
- Network settings
- Passwords
- C-Bus settings.

Ensure that the **backup size is no greater than 32 MB** as this is the maximum restore size.

3.5.4 Restore

- ① Click the **Restore** button.
- ② Select the file and save.



- Do not switch off the Controller during the restore procedure. The Controller will automatically reboot.
- Clean the browser cache after a restore. Use the settings of the browser or the short cuts [Ctrl] + [N] or [Ctrl] + [F5].
- **Backup files >32 MB cannot be restored.**

3.5.5 System configuration backup and restore

Create a system configuration backup file that can be used to restore system configuration if needed.

Path: **Utilities** tab → **System** button → **System** menu.

Backup system configuration

- ① In the **System** menu, select **Backup configuration**.
- ② A system configuration file is created in the **Downloads** folder on your computer.

Restore system configuration

- ① In the **System** menu, select **Restore configuration**.
- ② Select the system configuration file to open.



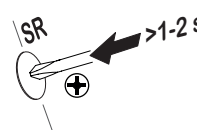
Here is an example of the default system configuration backup filename:
`sysconf-5500NAC2_Local-2019.10.24-12.09.tar.gz`

3.5.6 Reboot or hardware reset

Perform a reboot or hardware reset via either the configurator or reset button on the Controller.

Table 3: Reboot options

Function	Description	Access
Reboot	Forces running processes to stop and then reboots the Controller.	Configurator → Utility tab → System button → System tab → Reboot
	Forces running processes to stop and then reboots the Controller.	
Shutdown	System shuts down and data is saved. To run the system, power must be switched off and back on again or switching on via Hardware Reset is possible.	Configurator → Utility tab → System button → System tab → Shutdown
Hardware Reset	Power switches off and back again. Data is not saved. Use to restart a Controller that has shut down.	



- Use the **Shutdown** function to power off the Controller. The database is saved.
- Use the **Sync project data** function **before** performing a Hardware Reset to avoid the loss of data (the database is not saved during a Hardware Reset). See *Reset/Clean-up* on page 34.
- If the Controller has locked up and does not respond to the Software Reset Button, the Hardware Reset can be used. Unsaved data will be lost.

3.5.7 Reset/Clean-up

It is possible to delete the following items:

- Objects
- Object logs
- Object and high priority logs
- Alerts
- Logs
- Error logs
- Script storage.

If *Objects* is selected, they will be deleted from the visualization part as well.



Perform a back up **before** using this function. See *Backup* on page 32.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **Reset/clean-up** button.

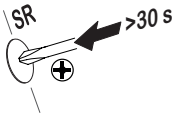
3.5.8 Factory reset

Perform a factory reset via either the configurator or the software reset button on the Controller.



- Perform a back up **before** using the *Factory reset* function.
- IP settings and security credentials are set to defaults:
 - IP: 192.168.0.10
 - User name: admin
 - Password: admin

Table 4: *Factory reset options*

Function	Description	Access
Factory Reset	Deletes all configurations and resets to the factory default settings.	Configurator → Utility tab → Factory reset button
Factory Reset (Software Reset button)	Deletes all configurations and resets to the factory default settings.	

3.6 Set Date and time

The Controller has an inbuilt capacitor to maintain date and time for three days. If the Controller has been offline for greater than that duration, the stored date and time may be incorrect.

When you log into the Controller, it may prompt you automatically that an incorrect date and time were detected and ask if you want to change it now. If so, it is strongly recommended to click **Yes**.



It is important for the Controller to have a correct date, time and timezone set before it is put into use.

3.6.1 Date and time

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **Date and time** button. Edit the following parameters.

Date and time

Current: Tue Mar 14 16:32:37 2017

Time: 16 32 37 Get from system

Date: 14.03.2017

Timezone: Australia/Sydney

Warning: NTP client is enabled, changing date and time manually is not recommended

First day of the week: Monday Sunday

Latitude/Longitude: [] []

Note: when left empty, latitude and longitude are taken from the current timezone and may not fully match the actual location

Save Cancel

Get from system - Synchronise the Controller to the date, time and time zone from the connected PC.

Timezone - Select the correct time zone. Even if the NTP client is enabled for date and time, the time zone must always be set to get correct daylight savings status and changes.

It is especially important for the timezone to be correct and consistent for all Controllers in a C-Bus network. If not, then the C-Bus Date and Time protocol that shares date, time and daylight savings offset over C-Bus will be unable to function correctly, and the Controllers may be in constant conflict regarding the correct values, leading to unstable date and time keeping in the system.

First day of week - This option changes calendar views, e.g. calendars displayed in schedulers.

Latitude and Longitude - Sunrise and sunset are calculated from the selected time zone. Specify exact sunrise and sunset times for your location by entering the location latitude and longitude. Sunrise and sunset can be used for time functions.

3.6.2 NTP client/server

By default, the Controller gets its date and time from remote network time protocol (NTP) servers. On the system page, configure the NTP client for the Controller.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **System** button → **Services** tab → **NTP client/server**.

The following remote servers are selected by default.

For Schneider 5550NAC2 and 5500AC2:

NTP (clock synchronization) ✕	
Client status	Enabled ▼
Server 1	0.schneider.pool.ntp.org
Server 2	1.schneider.pool.ntp.org
Server 3	2.schneider.pool.ntp.org
Server 4	3.schneider.pool.ntp.org
Local server status	Disabled ▼

Enable/disable the default servers and edit other servers.

You can enable or disable the local server status so that the Controller can act as an NTP server for other devices on the Local Area Network, if desired.

To use this function, enter the IP address of the Controller designated to be the local NTP server in the *NTP server/client* settings of other Controllers.



- After enabling the local time server function on the Controller, perform a reboot. See *Reboot or hardware reset* on page 33.
- Check if the chosen server can be accessed from the Controller. Ping the NTP server via the **Network utilities**. (**Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **System** button → **Status** tab).

Network utilities

Ping **Traceroute**

IP / Hostname: 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org

```
PING 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org (131.188.3.221): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=0 ttl=54 time=100.509 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=1 ttl=54 time=98.653 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=2 ttl=54 time=99.614 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=3 ttl=54 time=93.555 ms

--- 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 93.555/98.082/100.509 ms
```

Check the NTP status via the C-Bus status button on the main page. If the NTP client is enabled and it has acquired a lock to an NTP server, the status text will say **Locked**. Otherwise it will say **Not locked**.

C-Bus status	
Offline count	0
Overruns	0
Serial number	001009990350
Status	Online
Time: Broadcast timer	3247
Time: C-Bus role	Active
Time: NTP status	Not locked
Unit address	255
Utilisation (Avg %)	0.0
Utilisation (Recent %)	0.0

The Controller always participates as a C-Bus Date and Time Master Device on all the C-Bus networks that it is configured to access.

If the NTP status is **Locked**, then the Controller will not accept updates from C-Bus, and will publish its date, time and daylight savings offset to the C-Bus networks at a higher priority, which makes it more likely to acquire the **Active** C-Bus time role.

There may be multiple devices on a C-Bus network capable of being a C-Bus Date and Time Master Device. An arbitration algorithm ensures that the device with the best source of time (a locked NTP status is best) acquires the **Active** role. In the case of a tie, the unit with the lowest C-Bus Unit Address wins.

3.7 Updates and Firmware upgrade

It is recommended to update the firmware to install the latest features, security updates and bug fixes.

3.7.1 Install updates

Updates provide a way to install improvements and new features to the Controller. Updates may require a particular firmware version to be installed. See *Upgrade firmware* on page 38.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **Install updates** button.

Update files have the file extension *.lmup (LMUP).

Click the **Install updates** button and select the file. The Controller reboots after a successful installation.



- **Do not switch off** the Controller during the installation.
- Clean the browser cache after the installation. Use the settings in your browser or the short cuts [Ctrl] + [R] or [Ctrl] + [F5].
- **Do not install** applications or LMUP files from untrusted vendors (It can harm your controller or provide indirect access for any attackers).
- Use only SE webpages for downloading scripts or controllers firmware.
- LMUP file distribution channels are SE.com website and The Exchange. You can obtain them from SE support as well.

3.7.2 Upgrade firmware

Firmware version

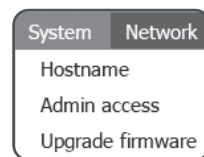
Check the firmware version installed in the Controller before updating.

The firmware version is displayed in the lower left corner of the *Configurator* page.

Installation

Install a firmware upgrade via the *System* page.

Path: *Configurator* → *Utility* tab → *System* button → *System* tab → *Upgrade firmware*.



The file name is: *.img

Click *Upgrade Firmware* and select the file.

A firmware upgrade can take up to several minutes. During the upgrade, the device will not respond and will reboot at least once.



- **Do not switch off** the Controller during the installation.
- Clean the browser cache after the installation. Use the settings in your browser or the short cuts [Ctrl] + [N] or [Ctrl] + [F5].

3.8 Status of the Controller

Information about the processor load, the used memory and the status of C-Bus is displayed on the bottom bar of the *Configurator* page:

CPU/IO: 0.09 0.04 0.03, Memory: 216MB free, C-Bus: Online C-Bus status Sync project data

Information about the processor load, memory, partitions and System log is shown on the *System* page.

Path: *Configurator* → *Utility* tab → *System* button → *Status* tab → *System status*.

System information is shown in *Error logs* and *Alerts* tab of the *Configurator*.

3.8.1 Processor load

The power LED on the Controller blinks at a rate proportional to the processor load.

The processor load is also displayed on the bottom bar of the *Configurator* page, under the heading CPU/IO. The processor load numbers (examples 0.59, 0.59, 0.61 shown above) represent the average number of processes running or waiting to run over the past 1 minute, 5 minutes or 15 minutes. Lower numbers indicate less load.

The load numbers are presented in different colours for easy recognition of problems.

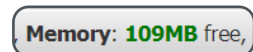
- <1 green
- >1 and <5 black
- >5 red.

If the load exceeds 1 for the 5 minute or 15 minute average, check the possible reasons, which may include:

- Number of active users accessing the visualization
- Number and resolution of images used for visualization
- Number of objects in the Objects list
- Frequency of updating objects:
 - Delta for sending a new value
 - Delta for change on the client side (BACnet COV setting)
 - Cycle time for sending
 - Polling cycle of the master/client – slave/server communication (Modbus).
- Number of active scripts:
 - Sleep time interval (resident scripts with sleep interval 0 have high impact on CPU load)
 - Using resident scripts instead of scheduled scripts.
- Logging policy (e.g. log all new objects). Excessive object logging degrades performance.

3.8.2 Memory

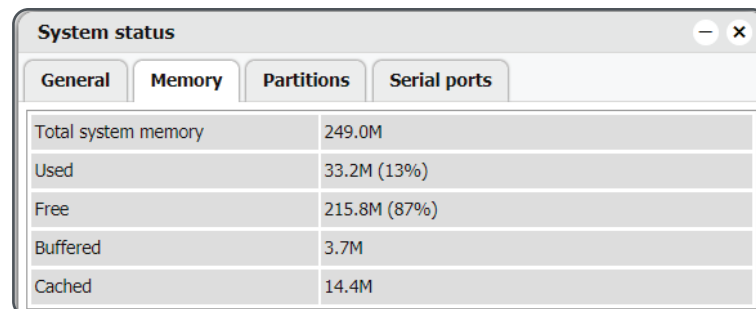
The used system memory is displayed on the right-hand side bottom bar of the **Configurator** page.



Memory will display in colour to indicate memory used:

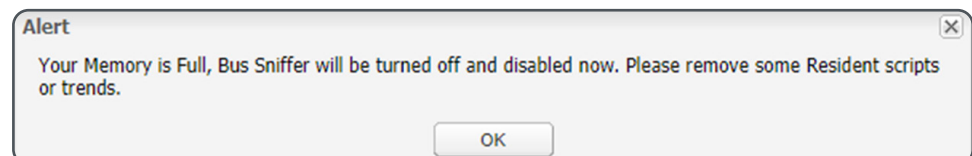
- >60 MB available in green
- >30 MB < 60 MB in black
- <30 MB in red.

To view detailed memory usage: **Configurator** > **System** > **Status** > **System Status** > **Memory** tab.



System status	
General	Memory
Total system memory	249.0M
Used	33.2M (13%)
Free	215.8M (87%)
Buffered	3.7M
Cached	14.4M

In the case of memory overflow, a pop-up will appear every 10 seconds until trends or scripts are cleared. Bus sniff will be turned off and disabled until the pop-up is cleared.



3.8.3 C-Bus Status

The status of C-Bus is displayed in the bottom bar of the **Configurator** page:

C-Bus powered	Online
No C-Bus power	Offline

Example script

In this example, a lighting channel (local network/Lights 1/room 99) does not respond, e.g. the address *Room 99* does not exist in **Objects** list or **Tag map**.

```
Error log 09.02.2017 00:33:57

Library cbuslogic:143: Unable to find group tag 'Room 99'
stack traceback:
 [C]: in function 'error'
Library cbuslogic:143: in function 'CBusLookupTags'
Library cbuslogic:342: in function '_GetCBusLightData'
```

3.8.6 Alerts

System messages and alert information for user-edited scripts are displayed in the **Alerts** tab of the **Configurator** page. See *Alerts* on page 181.

Example

In this example, system start alerts and a user-edited temperature alert are shown.

Alert time	Script name	Message
09.02.2017 01:00:10	Event for 0/228/5/1	Temperature too high, 36.0 °C
08.02.2017 08:11:35	system	System start

4 C-Bus objects

4.1 Overview

The objects in the **Objects** list are the basis of all communication via the Controller. These objects represent different C-Bus applications for sending and receiving values. In the case of the *Lighting application*, the *Target level* and the *Ramp rate* are sent. The objects can also be used for visualization and scripting.

With the special application *250 - User Parameter*, values can be used for visualization or scripting. Note that user parameters are not exported to a C-Bus Toolkit project.

The application *User Parameter* must be used for the connection to Modbus register values (see *Modbus Mapping* on page 204). By default, the Controller works as a Modbus client/master.

Objects can be exported for communication with BACnet (see *Object export* on page 218). The Controller can share its BACnet information with a BACnet client (such as a BACnet IP-BMS client).

C-Bus objects can be imported, manually added or automatically detected and displayed.

In addition to the **Objects** list, a **Tag map** list is available. When importing or adding new objects, the corresponding entry is available in the tag map. In the tag map, change all names (tags) and add new applications, groups and levels. See *Tag map* on page 111.

4.2 Properties

All added or imported objects are visible in the **Objects** list. If activated, new objects are automatically displayed.

Objects	Object logs	Tag map	Schedulers	Trend logs	Scenes	Vis. structure	Visualization	Vis. gra			
Name	Group a...	Ev...	Current...	L...	E...	Keywords	Updat...	Set value	Vis...	Levels	...
Local/Lighting/Main ...	0/56/2		128	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Light_Main	14.01....				
Local/Enable/Enable	0/203/1		ON (25...	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable	14.01....				
Local/Measurement/...	0/228/5/3		25.5 °C	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Basement	14.01....				
Local/Scenes/Scene...	0/202/1		Night (3)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All_1_2	12.01....				

All objects in the list have a unique composed address with 3 or 4 entries. These addresses are visible in the *Group address* column. All objects in this column are addressed as (network address)/(application identifier)/ + object information. The network address for the local network of the Controller is 0.

For the following examples, refer to the previous screenshot.

Example: Lighting (0/56/2) [ⓑ]

Local network	Lighting application (default)	Group address
0	56*	2

* 56 = default lighting application, 48-95 reserved for lighting applications (must be decimal format)

Example: Measurement (0/228/5/3) ©

Local Network	Measurement application	Device ID	Channel number
0	228	5	3

Example for Tags Ⓐ

The names added to the composed address are called *tags*. The tagged names for example Ⓑ are: Local/Lighting/Main office = (0/56/2).

4.3 Edit objects

Objects in the list can be edited by clicking the row. In this mode, undertake editing of the following functions and information:

- Keywords
- Log
- High priority log
- Export
- Object comment.

These functions are described in *Additional parameters for all applications* on page 107.

The network, application and group names are visible in the **Name** column of the object list.

The names can not be changed in the **Objects** list. To edit names, use the tag map. See *Tag map* on page 111.

4.4 C-Bus settings

Select the default network, application and device description in the C-Bus settings.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** tab → **C-Bus settings** tab.

The following table shows the default C-Bus settings.

Table 5: Default C-Bus settings

Local network	0 - Local The C-Bus Toolkit auto-assigns networks in descending order, starting at 254 (254, 253, ...). Applications imported from the Toolkit are added to the local network (0) of the Controller.
Default lighting application	56 - Lighting
Device description	Defaults <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 5500NAC2 (Network Automation Controller)• 5500AC2 (The Application Controller) The device description is used by the Control Systems IP Utility software that comes with Toolkit to help identify different devices on the C-Bus network. It may be customised to your requirements in this dialog, or from the IP Utility.

Enable CNI functionality	<p>If enabled, the Controller can act as a C-Bus Network interface for commissioning and maintenance.</p> <p>In C-Bus Toolkit, the Controller can be used as an interface to C-Bus networks. In Toolkit configure connection details for each C-Bus network:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Type: CNI • Address: IP address The default IP address of the Controller is 192.168.0.10 (or 192.168.254.10 if connected using the USB-B interface) • Port: 10001 The default port of the Controller CNI is 10001
CNI port	10001 (default)

4.5 Controller as network interface

In C-Bus Toolkit, the Controller can be used as an interface to C-Bus networks. See *C-Bus settings* on page 43. C-bus networks configured with the C-Bus Toolkit software can be commissioned and maintained in online mode via the configured Ethernet connection of the Controller. There are three ways to fill the objects list: Import; Sniffer function; and Add new objects.

4.5.1 Import

A project created with the *Toolkit* software can be imported as CGL file (*Utilities* tab → *Import Toolkit CGL file* button).

4.5.2 Sniffer function

The bus sniffer detects objects from the C-Bus network and automatically adds them to the list.

Objects are visible when C-Bus is connected and the *discover* function is activated (*Utilities* → *General Configuration* tabs).

4.5.3 Add new objects

New objects can be added manually (*Objects* tab → *Add new object* button).

You can also find the objects for visualization and exchange with other systems. The most typical way is to prepare a Toolkit project and import it. This is detailed in the next steps.

- ① Export from Toolkit into the Controller.
- ② Import CGL file into the Controller.
- ③ Add new objects manually or via the bus sniffer function.

Export from Toolkit into the Controller

Export any network in one of the projects configured in the C-Bus Toolkit. When importing to the Controller, all applications are added to the local network (0) of the Controller.

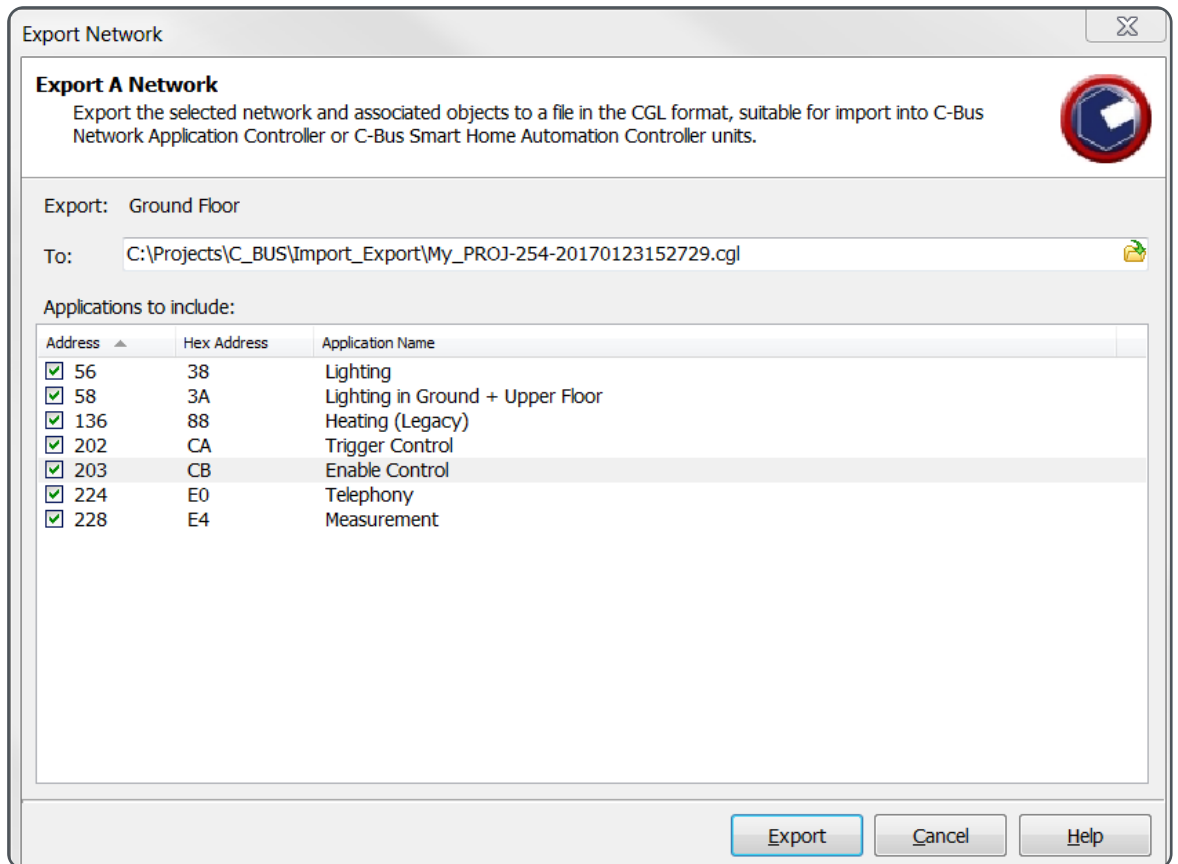


Install the complete C-Bus Toolkit, including C-Gate software and any USB drivers that Toolkit asks to install. The C-Gate software is required to export from the Toolkit and import to the Controller. C-Gate can also be used as part of a C-Bus control system.

Steps

- ① Open Toolkit.
- ② Select the Toolkit project and a network. 254 is the default number of the local network in the Toolkit. 0 is the number of the local network in the Controller (*C-Bus settings* on page 43).
- ③ Click the **Export CGL** button of the main menu of Toolkit.
- ④ Select the applications to export. As a default, all application addresses are selected (checked).
- ⑤ Select the folder, where the file is saved (see icon on the left side of the path).
- ⑥ Click the **Export** button. The message *The export was successful* appears.
- ⑦ The CGL file is now in the selected folder:
(e.g. Import_Export\My_PROJ-254-20170123150827.cgl).

When exporting, the *Export Network* window is displayed:



Import CGL file into the Controller

Import a *network* with *applications* using the **Utilities** tab.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** tab → **Import Toolkit CGL file** button.

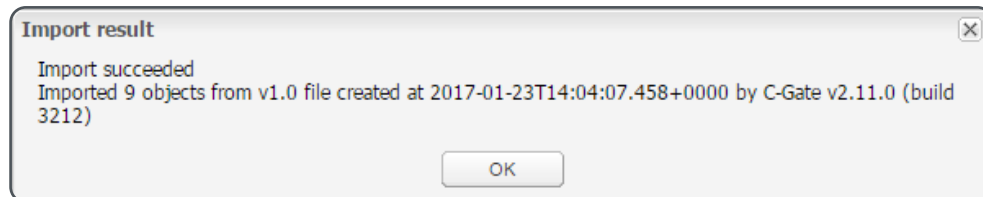
Once the Toolkit CGL file has been imported, the applications are listed in the **Objects** tab and are available in the **Tag map** tab.

Steps

In the **Configurator** page of the Controller:

- ① Click the **Import Toolkit CGL file** button.
- ② Select the file (*.cgl).
- ③ Click the **Save** button.

An *Import result* message is displayed after import.



Existing object names of the same application and group address are overwritten with the imported values. To change the names (tags), open the *Tag map* list. See *Tag map* on page 111.

Add new/additional objects via Bus sniffer function

To use additional objects, import an updated C-Bus Toolkit file.

Alternatively, manually add new objects in the **objects** list. See *Add new objects* on page 47.

When the sniffer function is activated and C-Bus is online, new objects are automatically added to the **objects** list. See *Sniffer function* on page 109.

Any objects added can then be edited See “4.3 Edit objects” on page 43.

4.6 Export from Controller to Toolkit

When adding new applications to the Controller, export all applications to your original Toolkit project.



Use the most recent version of C-Bus Toolkit (1.15 or higher). Install the full package including USB drivers. The C-Gate software is required to export and import to the Controller. C-Gate can also be used as part of a C-Bus control system.

The export of the *applications* of the Controller is done in the **Utilities** tab.

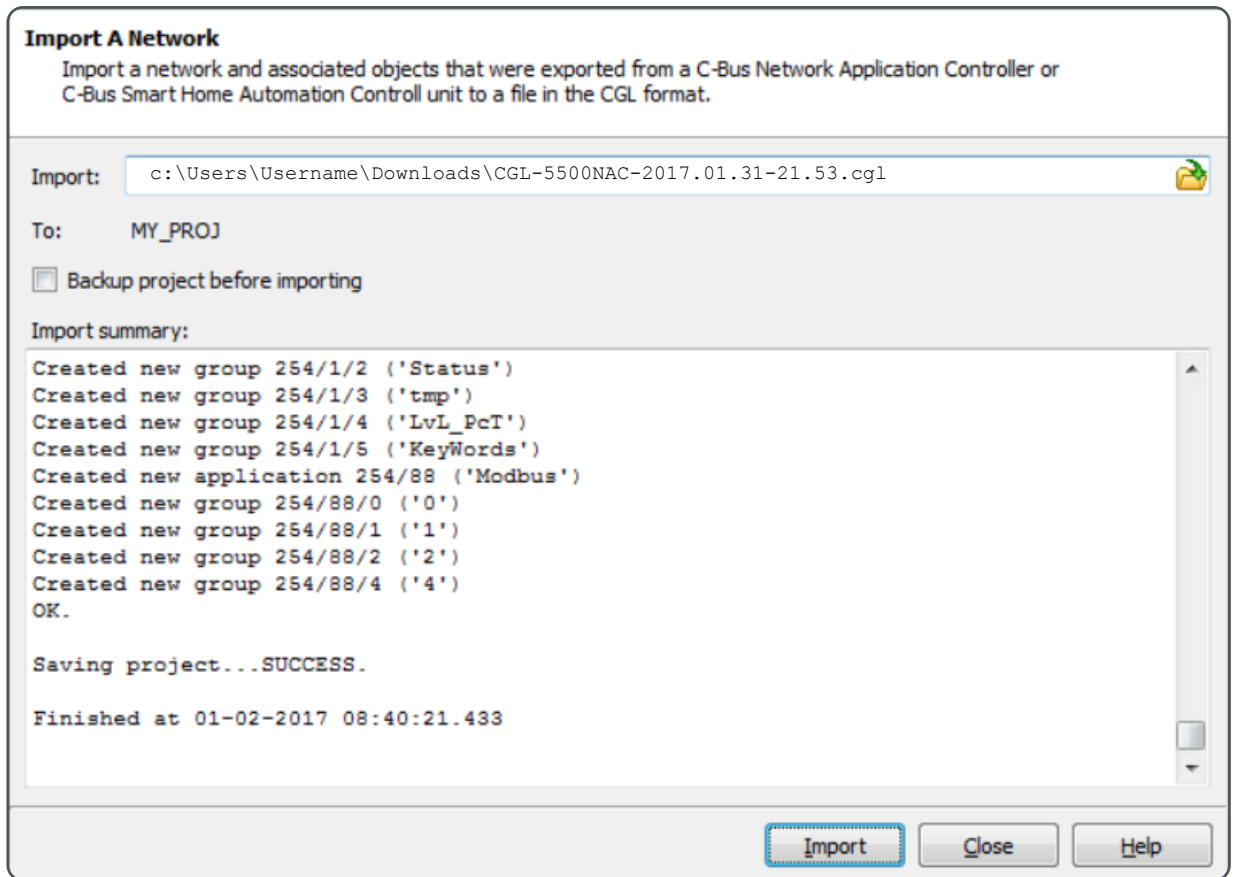
Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** tab → **CGL export** button.

Steps in the **Configurator** of the Controller

- ① Click the **CGL export** button.
- ② The file will be downloaded to the computer, where your browser runs (e.g. CGL-AutomationController-2017.01.31-10.16.cgl).

Steps in the Toolkit

- ① Open **C-Bus Toolkit**.
- ② Create a new C-bus project or select an existing project to import the CGL file. If more than one Controller is in a site, they will each have their own unique CGL file.
- ③ Click the **Import CGL** button at the bottom of the project window.
- ④ Select file to import (e.g. CGL-AutomationController-2017.01.31-10.16.cgl).
- ⑤ By default, a backup project will be created before import.
- ⑥ Click the **Import** button.
- ⑦ Save the backup file (e.g. MY_PROJ_31_Jan_2017_1029_1.15.0.cbz).
- ⑧ A message about the import appears (see next screen shot).



4.7 Add new objects

Manually add new objects to the **Objects** list. Once saved, the newly composed addresses are visible in the **Name** and the **Group Address** columns of the **Objects** list.

The following applications are predefined.

Table 6: Predefined addresses

Number	Application
56 (48-127)	Lighting
192	Media Transport
202	Trigger control
203	Enable
205	MRA
206	Error
208	Security
228	Measurement
238	Emergency & Exit Lighting (5500NAC2 only)
250	User Parameter
255	Unit Parameter

Each application has specific parameters that must be set when editing the address elements of a new object. Some options are common for all applications.

Click on the **Add new object** button at the bottom of the **Objects** tab to open an **Edit object** window.

The window is displayed with empty fields and the default application *56 - Lighting* selected. Click the **Application** drop-down list to select from the currently defined applications.



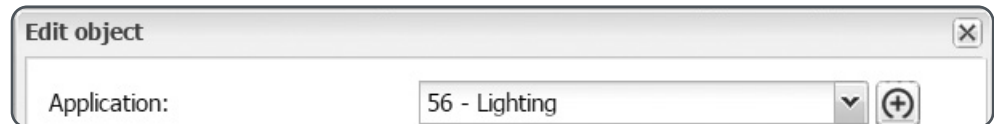
Click on the Application **Add** button  to create a new lighting application.

- Change names (tags) linked to the composed addresses in the **Tag map** tab.
- Activate/deactivate the *Log*, *High priority log* and the *Export* functions.
- Once a new application is saved, its application address cannot be edited. To change the address, first delete the existing address and then create a new one with the correct number.


4.7.1 Lighting application

The *Lighting* application is used for lighting and lighting-related applications. This includes switching different loads such as fans, curtains and shutters. The numbers 48–127 are reserved for lighting and lighting-related applications.

Click the **Add new object** button at the bottom of the **objects** tab to open an *Edit object* window:



Add a new application

By default, the lighting application (56) is opened. Click the Application **Add** button  to create a new lighting application.

ID	For lighting applications, select one of following numbers: 48–127.
Name	Max. 32 characters, except "/". The name is linked with the ID. Change the name in the Tag map tab.

Add new group address

Click the Group address **Add** button  to create a new group address.

This group address is linked with the new application.

ID	Select: 0–254
Name	Max. 32 characters, except "/". The name is linked with the ID. Change the name in the Tag map tab.

4.7.2 Emergency and exit lighting application

(5500NAC2 only) The emergency and exit lighting application is used for emergency and exit lighting. The number 238 is reserved for this application.

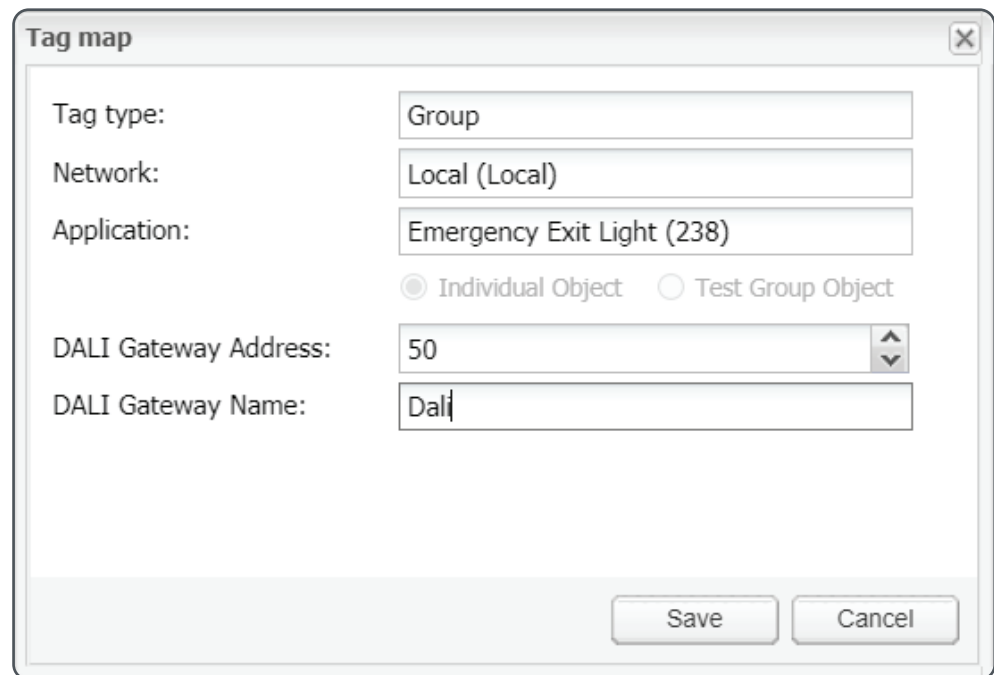
Application	Select: 238
Individual or Group object	Select whether to create an emergency and exit lighting group or an individual emergency exit light.
DALI Gateway Unit	(Individual Object selected) The unit address of the DALI-2 Gateway that the emergency light is connected to.
DALI Line	(Individual Object selected) The gateway DALI Line (Line A or Line B) that the emergency light is connected to.
DALI Object	A software method to easily align ECG devices created in the software with the short addressed physical device on the DALI line. (The ID assigned to the DALI short address.) Note: When creating a new object (individual or group), do not select any group tag in the drop down list that has already been assigned to an existing object. (See DALI Object ID settings below.)



The DALI group objects and individual objects are usually created from the SpaceLogic C-Bus Commission software.

DALI Gateway Unit settings

Click the  button to the right of the **DALI Gateway Unit** field to open the Tag map dialog (see next figure) and make settings for the DALI Gateway.



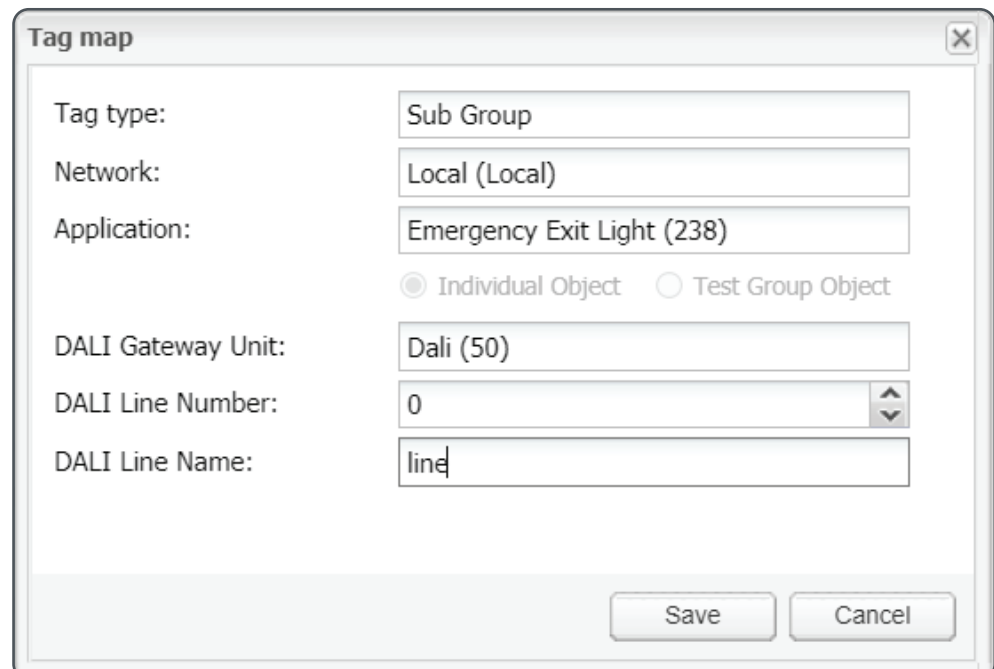
The 'Tag map' dialog box contains the following fields and options:

- Tag type: Group
- Network: Local (Local)
- Application: Emergency Exit Light (238)
- Individual Object Test Group Object
- DALI Gateway Address: 50
- DALI Gateway Name: Dali

Buttons: Save, Cancel

DALI Line settings

Click the  button to the right of the **DALI Line** field to open the Tag map dialog (see next figure) and make settings for the DALI Line.



The 'Tag map' dialog box contains the following fields and options:

- Tag type: Sub Group
- Network: Local (Local)
- Application: Emergency Exit Light (238)
- Individual Object Test Group Object
- DALI Gateway Unit: Dali (50)
- DALI Line Number: 0
- DALI Line Name: line

Buttons: Save, Cancel

DALI Object ID settings

Click the  button to the right of the **DALI Object ID** field to open the Tag map dialog (see next figure) and make settings for the DALI Object ID.

4.7.3 Add new trigger group

The *Trigger* application is similar to the lighting application and is used to trigger scenes. Different scenes are triggered with different values of the action selector. Configure scenes in the **Scenes** tab.

Click the **Add new object** button at the bottom of the **objects** tab to open an *Edit object* window.

Select the trigger application

In the **Application** list, select: *202 - Trigger*.

Add trigger group

Click the Trigger group **Add** button  to create a new *Trigger group* (0–254).

This Trigger group is linked with the *Trigger* application.

ID	Select: 0–254
Name	Max. 32 characters, except "/". The name is linked with the ID. Change the name in the Tag map tab.

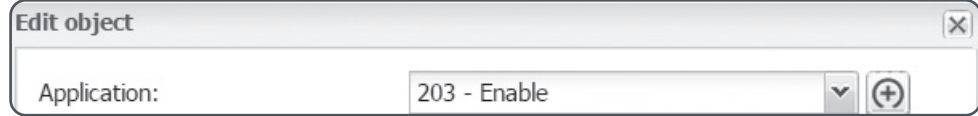
4.7.4 Add new enable group

The *Enable* application is similar to the lighting application and is used to enable/disable additional functions of a C-Bus device.

Click the **Add new object** button at the bottom of the **objects** tab to open an *Edit object* window.

Select the Enable application

In the Application list, select: **203 - Enable**.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit object" with a close button in the top right corner. Below the title bar, there is a label "Application:" followed by a dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is open, showing the selected option "203 - Enable". To the right of the dropdown menu is a green plus sign button.

Add network variable

Click the Network variable **Add** button  to create a new *Network variable* (0–254). This network variable is linked with the *Enable* application.

ID	Select: 0–254
Name	Max 32 characters, except "/". The name is linked with the ID. Change the name in the Tag map tab.

4.7.5 Add new measurement device and channel

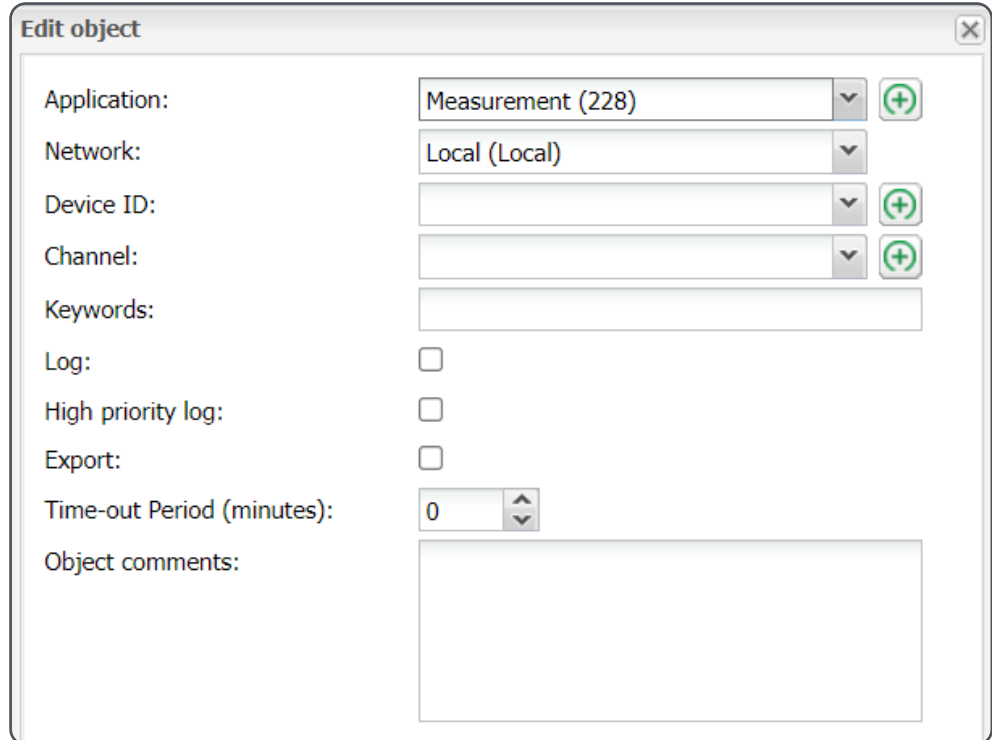
The *Measurement* application is used to send and receive measured values and units (e.g. temperature with °C). The measured value is transferred with a 24 bit floating point number and the unit is coded with 8 bit.

The measurement application is linked with a *Device ID* and a *Channel number*.

Click the **Add new object** button at the bottom of the **objects** tab to open an *Edit object* window.

Select the measurement application

In the **Application** list, select: **228 - Measurement**.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit object" with a close button in the top right corner. The dialog contains several fields:

- Application:** A dropdown menu set to "Measurement (228)" with a green plus sign button to its right.
- Network:** A dropdown menu set to "Local (Local)" with a green plus sign button to its right.
- Device ID:** A dropdown menu with a green plus sign button to its right.
- Channel:** A dropdown menu with a green plus sign button to its right.
- Keywords:** A text input field.
- Log:** A checkbox.
- High priority log:** A checkbox.
- Export:** A checkbox.
- Time-out Period (minutes):** A numeric input field with a spinner, set to "0".
- Object comments:** A large text area.

Device ID	Select: 0–254 The device ID is the <i>group</i> in the Tag map tab. Add a name (tag) in the Tag map tab.
------------------	---

Channel number Select: 0–254
 The channel is the sub-group in the **Tag map** tab. Add a name (tag) in the **Tag map** tab.

In the **Group address** column of the **Objects** list, the composed address for a measurement object looks like this example: 0/228/1/3

Local Network	Measurement application	Device ID	Channel number
0/	228/	1/	3
Groundfloor	Measurement	Temperature	ch

Add a new device ID

Click the Device ID **Add** button  to add a new *Device ID* (0–254).

ID Select: 0–254

Name Max 32 characters, except "/". The name is linked with the ID. Change the name in the **Tag map** tab.

Add a new channel

Click the Channel **Add** button  to add a new *Channel* (0–254).

ID Select: 0–254

Name Max 32 characters, except "/". The name is linked with the ID. Change the name in the **Tag map** tab.

4.7.6 Security application

A C-Bus enabled security system can be added to your Controller through the security application. The security application is used for monitoring and controlling C-Bus enabled security panels.

Typical uses include:

- Remote security keypad emulation
- Arming security systems
- Setting security system mode
- Monitoring alarms
- Monitoring security zones.

Table 7 is an example of a security system installation in a house with 8 monitored zones.

Table 7: Example of security system zones

Zone number	Description (Location)
1	Lounge
2	Dining Room
3	Bedroom 1
4	Bedroom 2
5	Bedroom 3
6	Games Room
7	Kitchen
8	Bathroom

Table 8 on page 54 is a list of the read-only objects which report status of the security application. Unless listed, they are all boolean types. Objects with a number of 20 (Zone isolation), and higher are per-zone—note that zones are indexed from 1.

Table 8: Read-only objects that report status of the security application

Address	Variable Name	Usage	Value	Settable?
0/208/0	Key press	CBusSecurityKeypress(net, key) Send key on the security application to network net. Key can either be a number from 0-255, a single character or one of the following strings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter • Shift • Panic • Fire • Arm • Away • Night • Day • Vacation. 		Yes
0/208/0	Raise Alarm	CBusSecurityRaiseAlarm(net) Returns the value of a user parameter or nil if not found.		Yes
0/208/0	Arm	CBusSecurityArm(net, level) Send an arm system to level message on the security application to net where level is one of the following strings (or nil for highest): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Away • Night • Day • Vacation • Highest. 		
0/208/0	Raise Tamper	CBusSecurityRaiseTamper(net) Send a raise tamper message on the security application to network net.		Yes
0/208/0	Drop Tamper	CBusSecurityDropTamper(net) Send a drop alarm message on the security application to network net.		Yes
0/208/1	Alarm sounding	Is the alarm sounding (i.e. emitting noise or raising some other sort of warning)?	True if the alarm is sounding	No
0/208/2	All zones OK	Are all security zones secure (sealed)?	True if all zones are sealed or isolated	No
0/208/3	Arm failed	Did the arm sequence fail?	True if the alarm system failed to arm	No
0/208/4	Arm ready	Is the system ready to arm?	False if any zone failed to arm	No
0/208/5	Armed state	Armed state: 0 = Disarmed 1 = Fully Armed 2 = Partially Armed (Other) (Other values are panel dependent)	Current arm state	No

Address	Variable Name	Usage	Value	Settable?
0/208/6	Battery charging	Is the battery charging?	True if the backup battery is being charged.	No
0/208/7	Entry delay	Is the entry delay in progress?	True if entry delay is running	No
0/208/8	Exit delay	Is the exit delay in progress?	True if exit delay is running	No
0/208/9	Fire alarm	Is the fire alarm sounding?	True if fire is detected	No
0/208/10	Gas alarm	Is the gas alarm sounding?	True if gas is detected	No
0/208/11	Line cut alarm	Is the line cut alarm sounding?	True if phone line cut detected	No
0/208/12	Low battery	Is the battery charge low?	True if backup battery is sub 1 hour	No
0/208/13	Mains failure	Is there a mains power failure?	True if mains power not detected.	No
0/208/14	Normal operation	Is the operation normal (no alarms or warnings)	True if no alarms detected.	No
0/208/15	Other alarm	Is there another alarm sounding?	True if a special alarm condition is detected.	No
0/208/16	Panic	Is the system in the panic state?	True of the system has emitted a panic message.	No
0/208/17	Password status	Status of the password entry: 1 = password succeeded 2 = password failed 3 = password disabled 4 = password enabled		No
0/208/18	Password OK	Was the last password correct?	True if last password entry successful.	No
0/208/19	Tamper	Is the system in the tamper state?	True if system detects a tamper condition	No
0/208/20	Zone isolated	Is a security zone isolated (disabled)?	True if system has isolated this zone	No
0/208/21	Security Zone Status	Security zone status: 0 = Sealed 1 = Unsealed 2 = Open 3 = Short		No
0/208/22	Security Zone Name	Name of a security zone.		No



When adding a security object for the first time, all the associated tags are created for the security application. If a security object is deleted, so are the associated tags. Adding the object back will also re-create the tag/s.

The Controller maintains state internally of the security application based on messages it receives from a security panel operating on the network. All except the exposed security objects are read-only and reflect direct or derived state reported by the panel. The only control the Controller has of the security application is via the parameter **Command** (0/208/0) which provides a way for visualisation and scripting to send the following messages and arguments:

- Simulate keypress (argument: keypress)
- Raise the alarm (no argument)
- Arm the system (argument: level to arm to)

- Raise tamper (no argument)
- Drop tamper (no argument)
- Display message on panel (argument: message to be displayed).



Due to the nature of operation, messages will not necessarily have an immediate effect on the state of the system. For example, if a script or UI event causes an Arm system message to be sent the value of Armed state will not change until the panel processes the message and send a status message back.

Example Project

This example project describes how to add the security objects to the Controller.

Create a security related object

Path: **Configurator** → **Objects** tab → **Add new object** button → **System** tab → **Admin Access**

In the **Edit object** window, select:

- Network = **Home (Local)**
- Application = **208 - Security**
- Parameter = **Command**.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit object' dialog box with the following settings:

- Application: Security (208)
- Network: Local (Local)
- Parameter: Command
- Keywords: (empty)
- Log:
- High priority log:
- Export:
- Object comments: (empty text area)

The 'Save' button at the bottom right is highlighted with a green box.

Click **Save**. The parameter **Command** is created for the security application.

Add security related objects

Refer to *Create a security related object* on page 56 to add each of the following parameters:

Command
Alarm sounding
All zones OK
Arm failed
Arm ready
Armed state
Battery charging
Entry delay
Exit delay
Fire alarm
Gas alarm
Line cut alarm
Low battery
Mains failure
Normal operation
Other alarm
Panic
Password status
Password OK
Tamper
Zone isolated
Zone state
Zone name

Add security zones

Refer to *Create a security related object* on page 56 to add Zones 1 to 8, one at a time.

In the *Edit object* window, select:

- Network = **Home (Local)**
- Application = **208 - Security**
- Parameter = **Zone state**
- Zone = **Lounge**, create label *Lounge* for Zone with Zone Number **1**, then **Save**

Edit object

Application: Security (208) +

Network: Local (Local)

Parameter: Zone state

Zone: Lounge (1) +

Keywords:

Log:

High priority log:

Export:

Object comments:

Save Cancel

Repeat to add Zones 2 to 8. Refer below table to create all Zones.

Table 9: Example of security system zones

Zone number	Zone Name
1	Lounge
2	Dining Room
3	Bedroom 1
4	Bedroom 2
5	Bedroom 3
6	Games Room
7	Kitchen
8	Bathroom

Add zone isolated objects

Select *Zone Isolated* in the **Parameter** field, then create **Zone** = Lounge, with Zone Number 1 and click **Save**.

Edit object

Application: Security (208) (+)

Network: Local (Local)

Parameter: Zone isolated

Zone: Lounge (1) (+)

Keywords:

Log:

High priority log:

Export:

Object comments:

Save Cancel

Repeat for Zones 2 to 8. Refer *Table 9* to create all Zones

The added parameters will show in the **Objects** tab, identifying the name and group address.

Name	Group address ▲
Local/Security/Command	0/208/0/0
Local/Security/Alarm sounding	0/208/1/0
Local/Security/All zones OK	0/208/2/0
Local/Security/Armed state	0/208/5/0
Local/Security/Fire alarm	0/208/9/0
Local/Security/Normal operation	0/208/14/0
Local/Security/Zone isolated/Lounge	0/208/20/1
Local/Security/Zone isolated/Dining Room	0/208/20/2
Local/Security/Zone isolated/Bedroom 1	0/208/20/3
Local/Security/Zone isolated/Bedroom 2	0/208/20/4
Local/Security/Zone isolated/Bedroom 3	0/208/20/5
Local/Security/Zone isolated/Games Room	0/208/20/6
Local/Security/Zone isolated/Kitchen	0/208/20/7
Local/Security/Zone isolated/Bathroom	0/208/20/8
Local/Security/Zone state/Lounge	0/208/21/1
Local/Security/Zone state/Dining Room	0/208/21/2
Local/Security/Zone state/Bedroom 1	0/208/21/3
Local/Security/Zone state/Bedroom 2	0/208/21/4
Local/Security/Zone state/Bedroom 3	0/208/21/5
Local/Security/Zone state/Games Room	0/208/21/6
Local/Security/Zone state/Kitchen	0/208/21/7

Preparing security icons

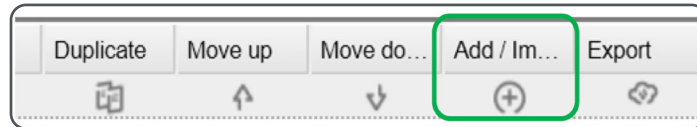
If special security icons are required, other than the default icons provided, select path **Vis.Graphics** tab to display icons.

To add more icons → **Add icons** button.

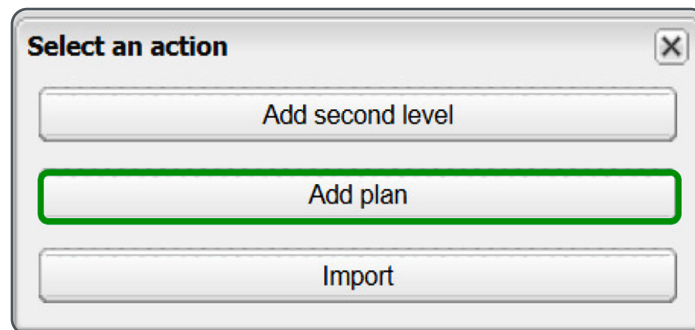
Choose File to add you own icons file. Click **Save**.

Add a security user interface page/plan

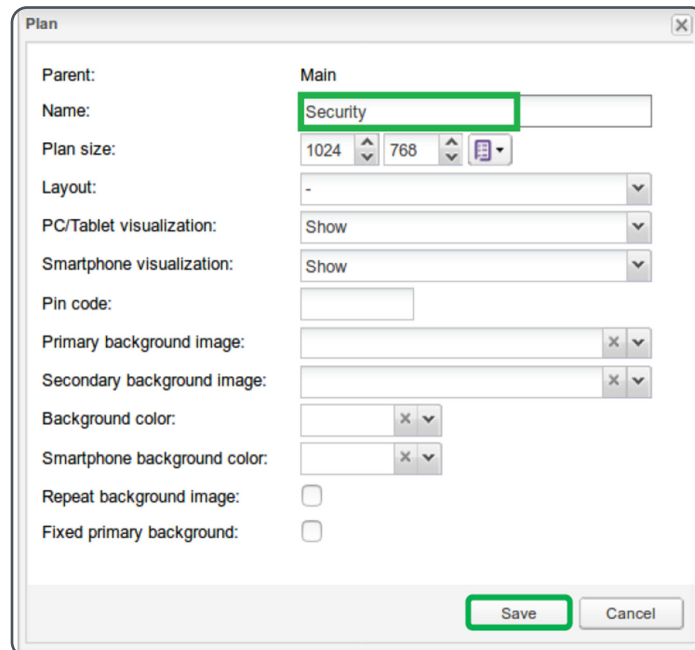
Path: **Vis.Structure** → **Add/Import** button.



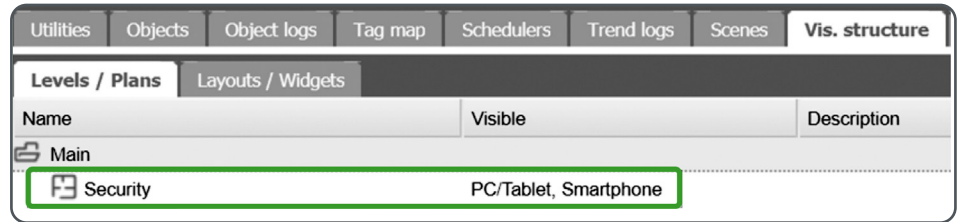
When the **Select an action** box appears, select **Add plan**.



When the **Plan** window appears, at **Name** enter **Security**, then click **Save**.



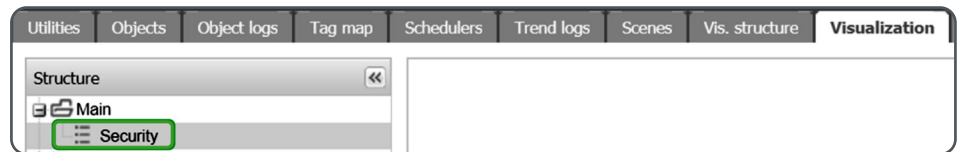
The **Vis. Structure** tab, **Levels/Plan** tab displays **Security** in the Main list.



Create visualization elements (icons) for commands on security page/plan

Ensure no visual element is selected on the **Levels/plan** page.

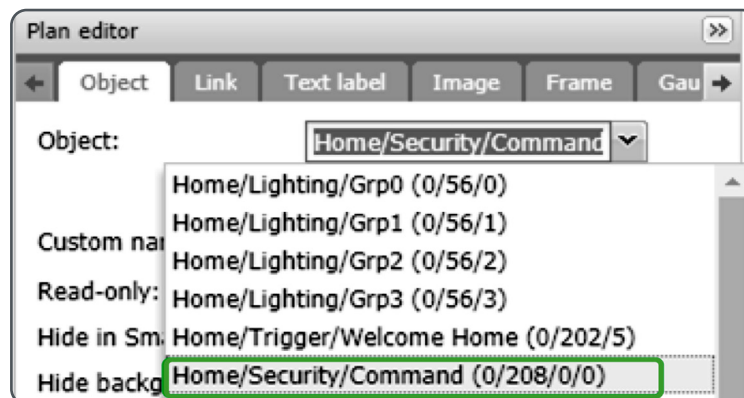
Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** tab → **Structure** view → **Security** object.



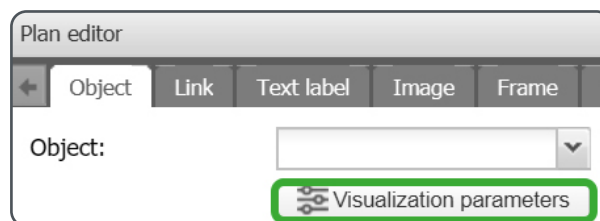
Click **Unlock current plan for editing** at the bottom right to enter edit mode.



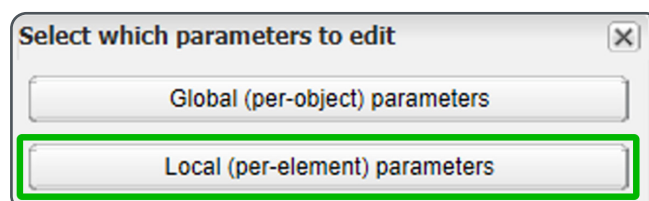
To add object visualization elements, click the **Object** drop down arrow, then select **Home/Security/Command (0/208/0/0)**.



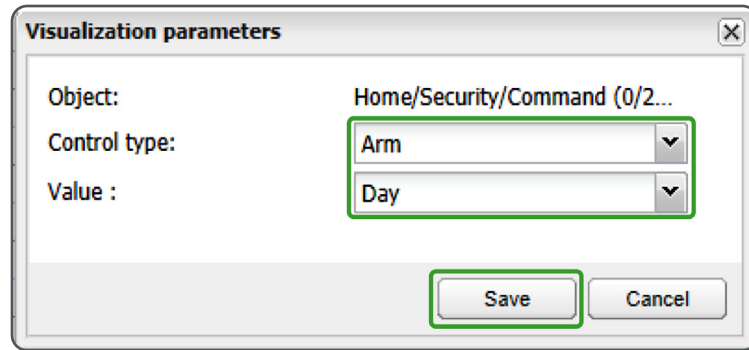
Click **Visualization parameters**.



Click the **Local (per-element) parameters** button.

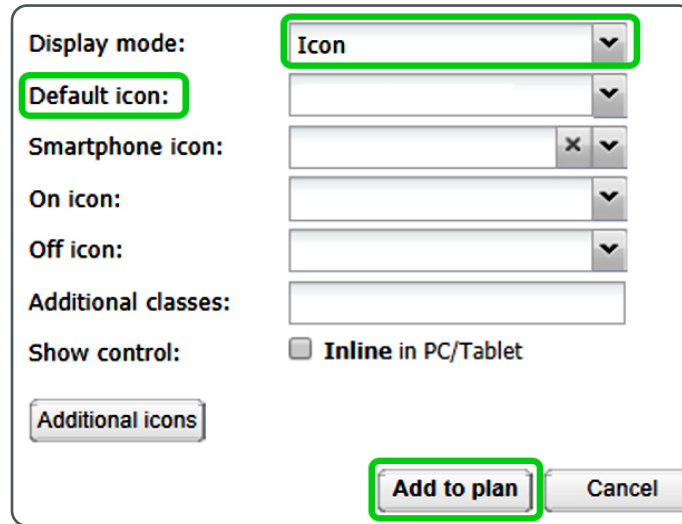


In the **Visualization parameters** window, enter **Control Type** = *Arm* and **Value** = *Day*, then click **Save**.



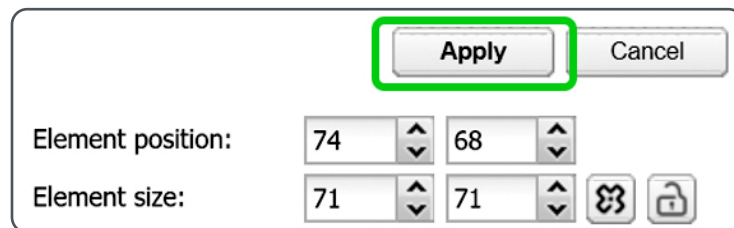
In Plan Editor, on the **Object** tab, select **Display mode** = *Icon*, select the **Default icon** for the command *Armdaytime* mode.

Click **Add to plan** to add the icon on to the security page grid.



Click the icon on the grid to adjust the position and size, then drag the icon to the desired location.

With the icon selected, use **Element position** and **Element size** to align the icon. Click **Apply**.



Repeat above steps to add icons for all visualization elements.

Status Name and **Possible Value** can be added to each icon, as per *Table 10*.

Table 10: Status names and possible values for security icons

Status Name	Possible Values
Normal operation	True/False
Alarm sounding	True/False
All zones OK	True/False
Fire alarm	True/False
Armed state	Disarmed/Fully armed/Partially armed
Zone 1 isolated	True/False
Zone 2 isolated	True/False
Zone 3 isolated	True/False
Zone 4 isolated	True/False
Zone 5 isolated	True/False
Zone 6 isolated	True/False
Zone 7 isolated	True/False
Zone 8 isolated	True/False
Zone 1 state	Sealed/Unsealed/Open/Short
Zone 2 state	Sealed/Unsealed/Open/Short
Zone 3 state	Sealed/Unsealed/Open/Short
Zone 4 state	Sealed/Unsealed/Open/Short
Zone 5 state	Sealed/Unsealed/Open/Short
Zone 6 state	Sealed/Unsealed/Open/Short
Zone 7 state	Sealed/Unsealed/Open/Short
Zone 8 state	Sealed/Unsealed/Open/Short

Add Command description, Control Type and Values for security objects from *Table 11*.

Table 11: Command descriptions, control types and values

Command description	Control type	Value
Arm in day mode	Arm	Day
Arm in away mode	Arm	Away
Arm in vacation mode	Arm	Vacation
Keypad 0	Keypress	0
Keypad 1	Keypress	1
Keypad 2	Keypress	2
Keypad 3	Keypress	3
Keypad 4	Keypress	4
Keypad 5	Keypress	5
Keypad 6	Keypress	6
Keypad 7	Keypress	7
Keypad 8	Keypress	8
Keypad 9	Keypress	9
Keypad *	Keypress	*
Keypad Enter	Keypress	Enter
Keypad Arm	Keypress	Arm

Repeat to add all new icons required.

Click **Save and reload plan**. When selected, the icon sends C-Bus commands.



Clicking **Save and reload plan** after adding each element avoids having to exit edit mode for each element.

Create visualization elements for status on security page/plan

Ensure no visual element is selected on the page/plan.

Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** tab → **Structure** view → **Security** object.

Click **Unlock current plan for editing**.

In the **Plan Editor**, select the **Object** tab.

At **Object**, select *Local/Security/Normal operation (0/208/14/0)*.

At the **Display Mode** dropdown, select *Icon*.

At **On icon**, select an icon for visualization representing true (on).

At **Off icon**, select an icon for visualization representing false (off).



Normal operation has 2 possible values: *True* and *False*.

Click **Add to plan**.

Plan editor

Object Link Text label Image Frame Gau

Object: Home/Security/Normal op

Visualization parameters

Custom name:

Read-only:

Hide in Smartphone:

Hide background:

Pin code:

Widget: No widget

Display mode: Icon

Smartphone icon:

On icon: NormalOperation.jpg

Off icon: Notnormaloperation.jpg

Additional classes:

Show control: Inline in PC/Tablet

Add to plan Cancel

Select the newly created icon on the grid to adjust position and size.

Click **Apply**.

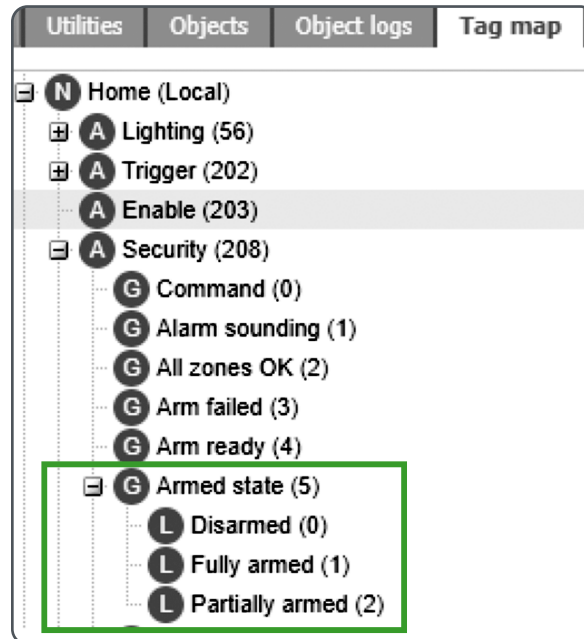
Click **Save and reload plan**.

Repeat to add other icons to the security page.

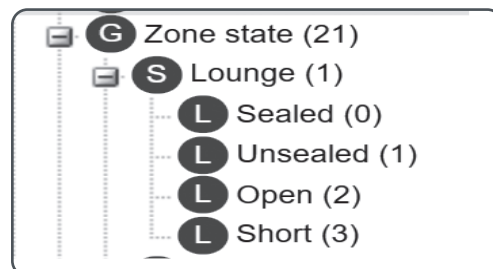
Viewing armed state and zone state values

Path: **Tag map** tab → **Local** → **Security** object → **Armed state** object.

Expand **Armed state** to view the values: *Disarmed (0)*; *Fully armed (1)*; and *Partially armed (2)*.



Scroll to **Zone state** to view the values: *Sealed (0)*; *Unsealed (1)*; *Open (2)*; and *Short (3)*.



Setting up icons for armed state

Ensure no visual element is selected on the levels/plan page.

Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** tab → **Structure** view → **Security** object.

Click **Unlock current plan for editing** at the bottom right to enter edit mode.



To add object visualization elements, click the **Object** drop down arrow, then select *Local/Security/Armed state*.

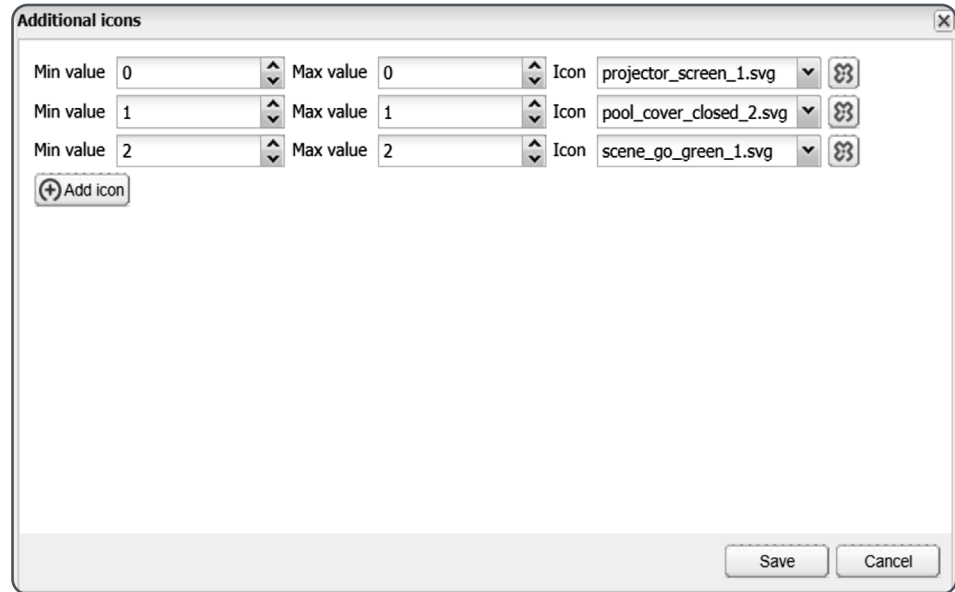
Select a **Default icon** from the available selection.

Scroll down to select the button for **Additional icons**.

In the **Additional icon** window, click **Add icon**.

Enter the **Min value** and **Max value**, and select the icon for the values *Disarmed (0)*; *Fully armed (1)*; and *Partially armed (2)*.

Click **Save**.



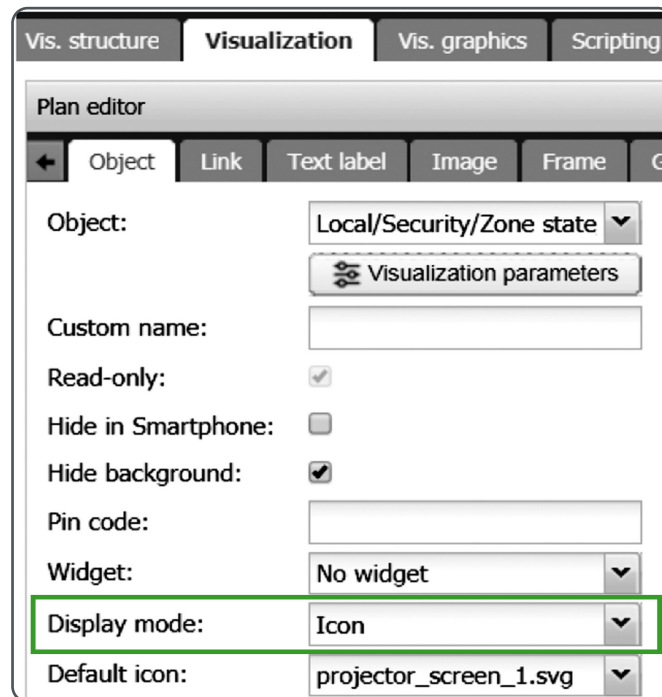
Setting up icons for zone state

Unlock the plan for editing. See *Setting up icons for armed state* on page 65.

Click the **Object** drop down arrow, then select *Local/Security/Zone state/Lounge (0/208/21/1)*.

Select **Display mode** = *Icon*.

Select the **Default icon** from the available selection.



Repeat for all Zone states required.

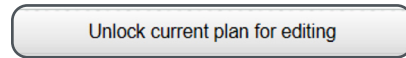
Click **Save and reload plan**.

Creating text labels for the zones

Ensure no visual element is selected on the levels/plan page.

Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** tab → **Structure** view → **Security** object.

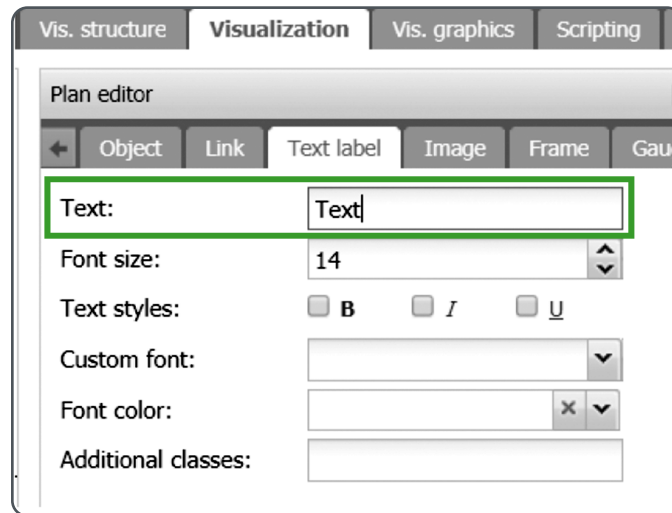
Click **Unlock current plan for editing** at the bottom right to enter edit mode.



Select an **Object** drop down arrow to add a label to.

Click the **Visualization** tab, then select **Text label** from the **Plan editor**.

In the **Text** field, enter the required text label.



Click **Add to plan**.

Click the text label on the grid to adjust size and position.

Click **Apply**.

Click **Save and reload plan**.

Repeat until all text labels required are in position. In this example, we have used the following labels.

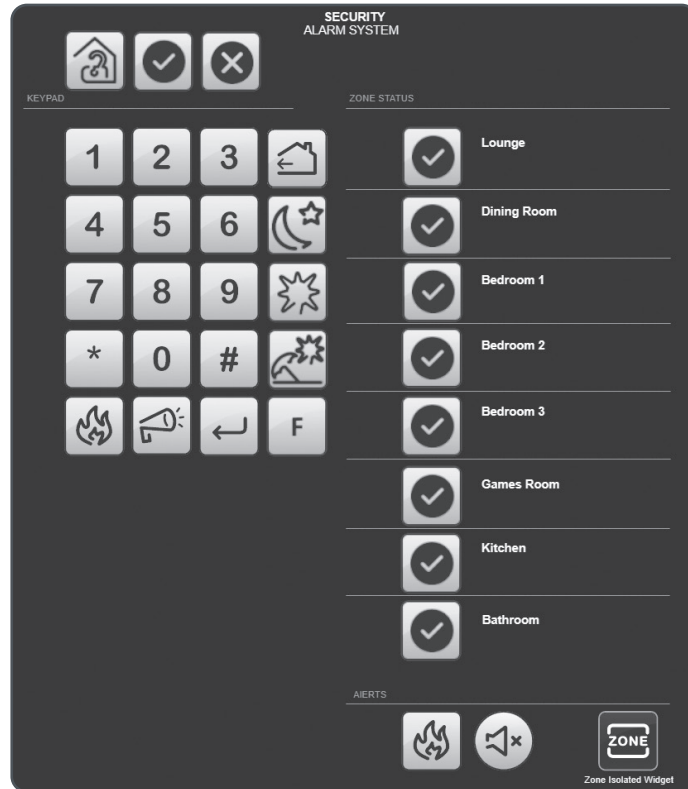
Table 12: Zone numbers and example labels

Zone number	Description (Location)
1	Lounge
2	Dining Room
3	Bedroom 1
4	Bedroom 2
5	Bedroom 3
6	Games Room
7	Kitchen
8	Bathroom

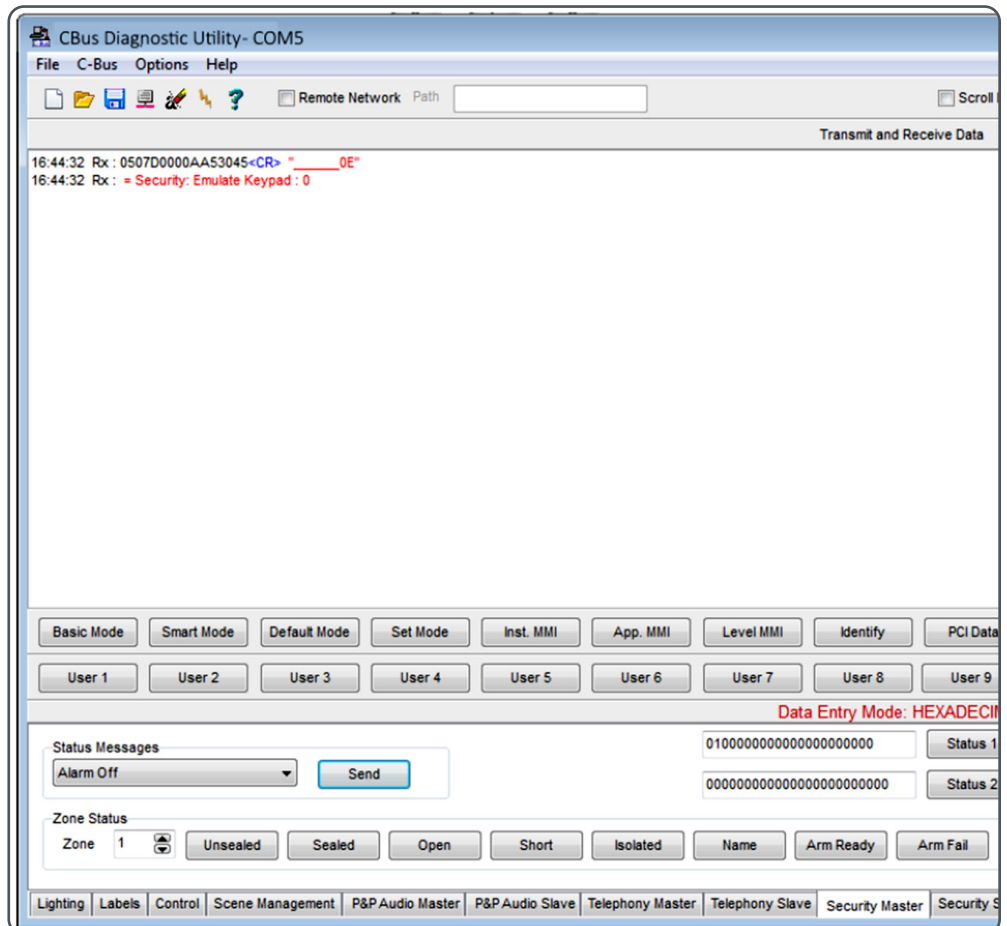
To run a test view, select the **view icon** in the bottom left window.



All the visual elements in this example security page could be arranged like this:



Clicking any command icon, e.g. a keypad button, sends a C-Bus message from the C-Bus Diagnostic Utility. An example of the command record is as follows:





When using the Security panel or C-Bus Diagnostic Utility to change a related status, the status icon changes on the security page. The icon changes for **Alarm sounding** becoming *True* when issued an **Alarm on** message on Zone 1 from the C-Bus Diagnostic Utility.

Lua scripting example

This Lua scripting example demonstrates triggering a script on a security event. In this example, a disarm event triggers a script which activates the **Welcome Home** scene.

Add Tag map name

Path: **Configurator** → **Tab map** tab.

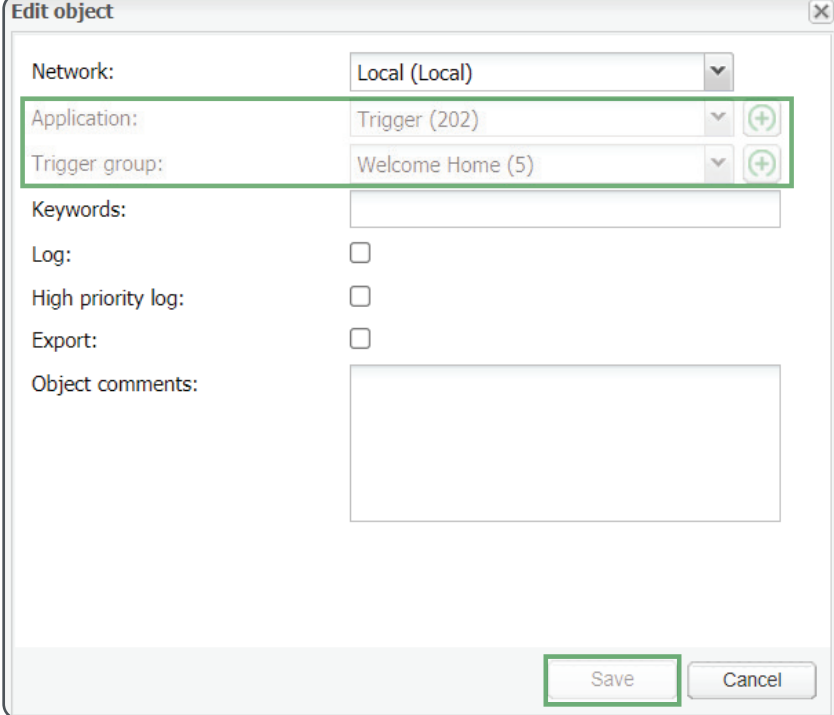
- ① Scroll to *Trigger Control (202)* and click
- ② Enter **Group address** = 5.
- ③ Enter **Name** = *Welcome Home*.
- ④ Click **Save**.

Tag type:	Group
Network:	Home (Local)
Application:	Trigger (202)
Group address:	5
Name:	Welcome Home

Save Cancel

Assign trigger group

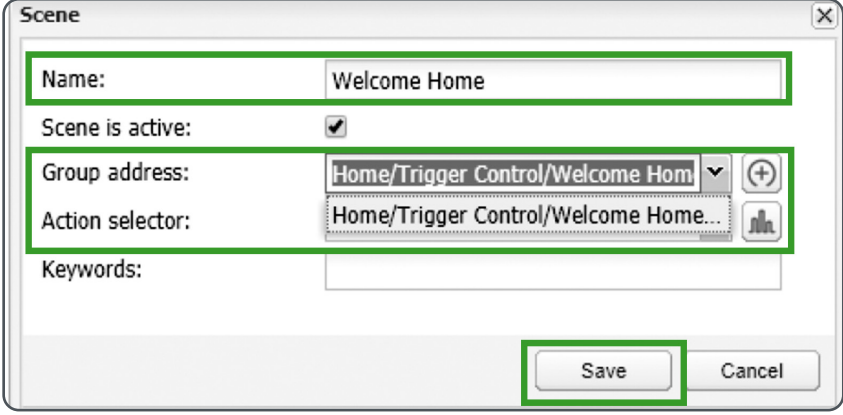
- ① Open the **Objects** tab.
- ② Click **Add new object**.
- ③ In the **Edit object** window select *Application = Trigger Control (202)*, then select **Trigger group = Welcome Home (5)**.
- ④ Click **Save**.



The screenshot shows the 'Edit object' dialog box. The 'Network' dropdown is set to 'Local (Local)'. The 'Application' dropdown is set to 'Trigger (202)' and the 'Trigger group' dropdown is set to 'Welcome Home (5)'. The 'Keywords' field is empty. The 'Log', 'High priority log', and 'Export' checkboxes are all unchecked. The 'Object comments' field is empty. The 'Save' button is highlighted with a green box.

Add Scene

- ① Open the **Scenes** tab.
- ② Select **Add Scene**.
- ③ At the **Scene** window, set **Name = Welcome Home**.
- ④ Select the **Group address = Home/Trigger Control/Welcome Home (0/202/5)**.
- ⑤ Enter **Action selector = 6**.
- ⑥ Click **Save**.



The screenshot shows the 'Scene' dialog box. The 'Name' field is 'Welcome Home'. The 'Scene is active' checkbox is checked. The 'Group address' dropdown is set to 'Home/Trigger Control/Welcome Home' and the 'Action selector' dropdown is set to 'Home/Trigger Control/Welcome Home...'. The 'Keywords' field is empty. The 'Save' button is highlighted with a green box.

Set Scene

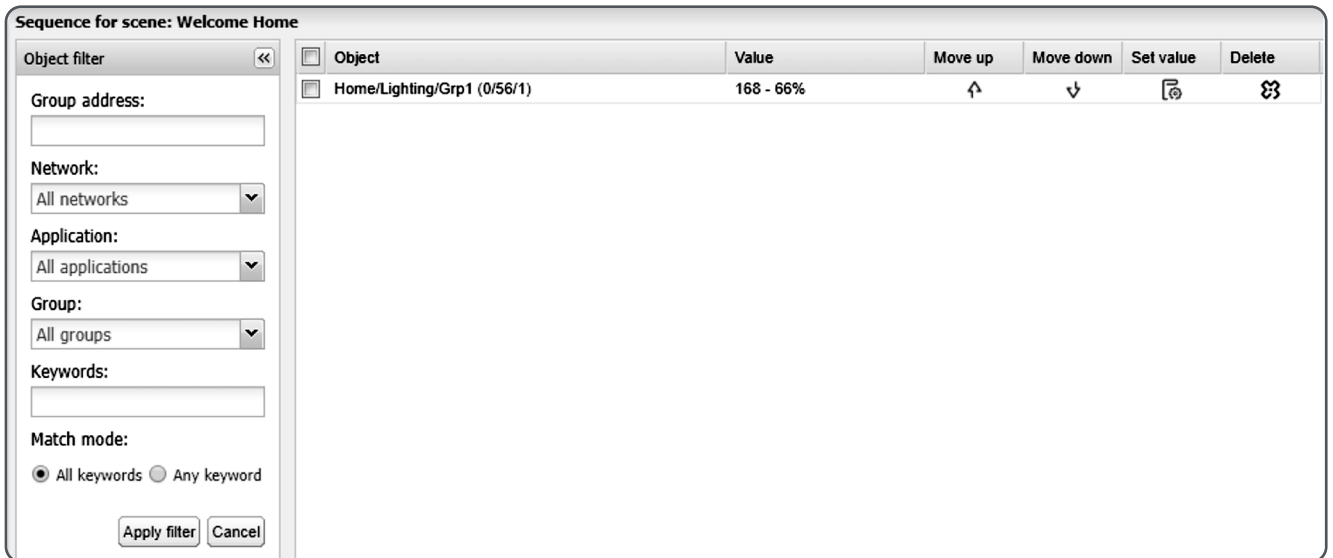
Click **Sequence** to add reactions for this scene.



Click **Add objects**.

When the **Sequence for scene: Welcome Home** page displays, add **Group Address** = *Home/Lighting/grp1 (0/56/1)*.

Set **Value** at 168.



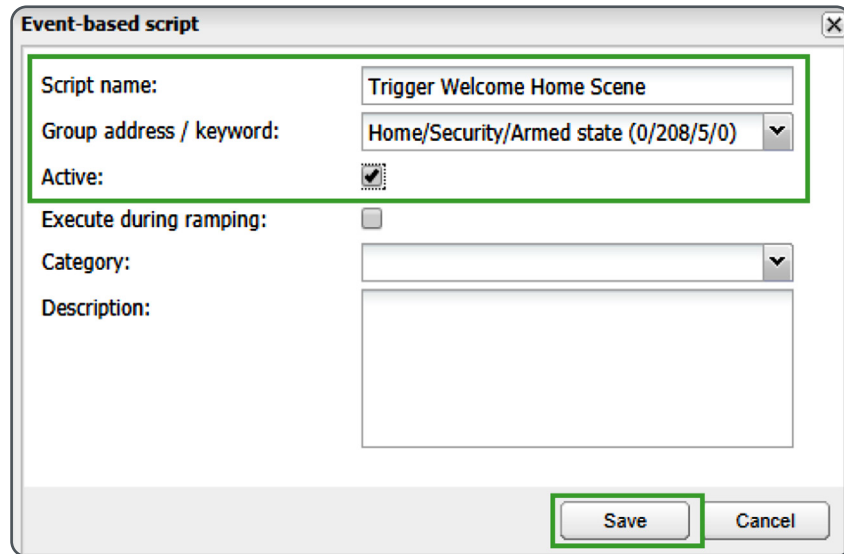
Lua script for disarm event trigger

Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **Event-based** button → **Add new script** button.

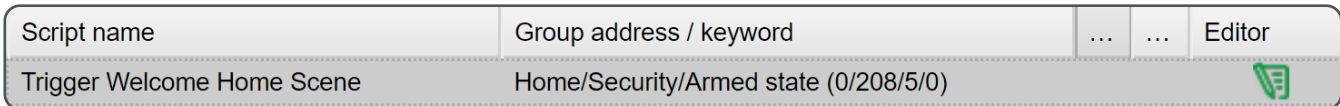
In the **Event-based script** window, enter the **Script name** *Trigger Welcome Home Scene* when disarmed.

Select the **Group address** *Home/Security/Armed state (0/208/5/0)*. Check **Active**.

Click **Save**.



Scroll to the Script name *Trigger Welcome Home Scene*, then click **Editor**.

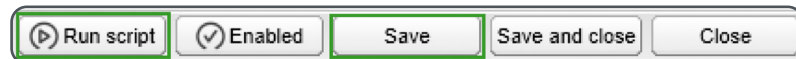


The following script sets the *Trigger Welcome Home Scene*.

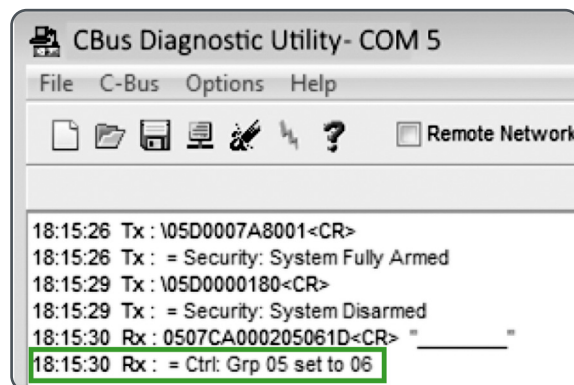
```
-- if armed state has a value changed to 0 (disarmed)
if event.getvalue() == 0 then
  -- Set trigger level of group 5 to 6
  SetTriggerLevel=(5, 6)
end
```

Click **Run script**.

At the **Set object value** window click **Save**. The script list status changes to *Active*.



If **Armed state** is set to *Fully armed* and then to *Disarmed* on Zone 1 from the C-Bus Diagnostic Utility (the value need to be changed to *Fully armed* hence setting it to another value first). The scene **Welcome Home** sets the trigger group 5 to value 6.



Lua script for fire alarm event trigger

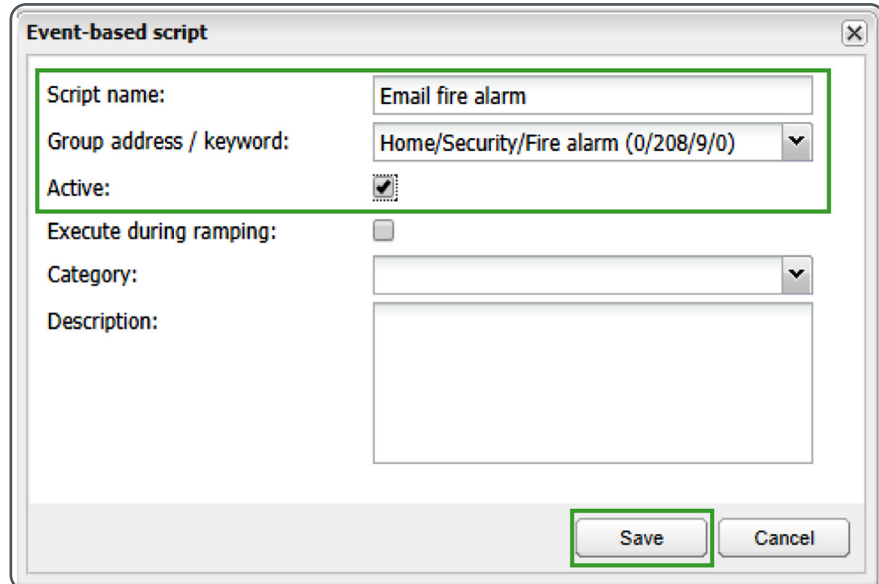
Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **Event-based** button → **Add new script** button.

In the **Event-based script** window, enter the **Script name** *Email fire alarm*.

Select **Group Address** = *Home/Security/Fire alarm (0/208/9/0)*.

Check **Active**.

Click **Save**.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Event-based script". It has several fields: "Script name" with the text "Email fire alarm"; "Group address / keyword" with a dropdown menu showing "Home/Security/Fire alarm (0/208/9/0)"; "Active" with a checked checkbox; "Execute during ramping" with an unchecked checkbox; "Category" with an empty dropdown menu; and "Description" with an empty text area. At the bottom right, there are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons. A green box highlights the "Save" button.

In the **Script name** window, scroll to *Email fire alarm*, then click **Editor**.

The following script sets the Email fire alarm:

```
if event.getvalue() == true then
    return
end
-- make sure mail settings are set in user function library before
using this function
local subject = 'Fire Alarm'
local message = 'You have got a fire alarm\n'
message = message .. 'Current status:\n'
local detailedInfo={}
detailedInfo.alarmSounding = CBusSecurityGet(0, 'Alarm sounding')
detailedInfo.allZonesOK = CBusSecurityGet(0, 'All zones OK')
detailedInfo.armedState = CBusSecurityGet(0, 'Armed state')
detailedInfo.fireAlarm = CBusSecurityGet(0, 'Fire alarm')
detailedInfo.normalOperation = CBusSecurityGet(0, 'Normal
operation')
message = message .. tab2str(detailedInfo)
mail('user@example.com', subject, message)
```

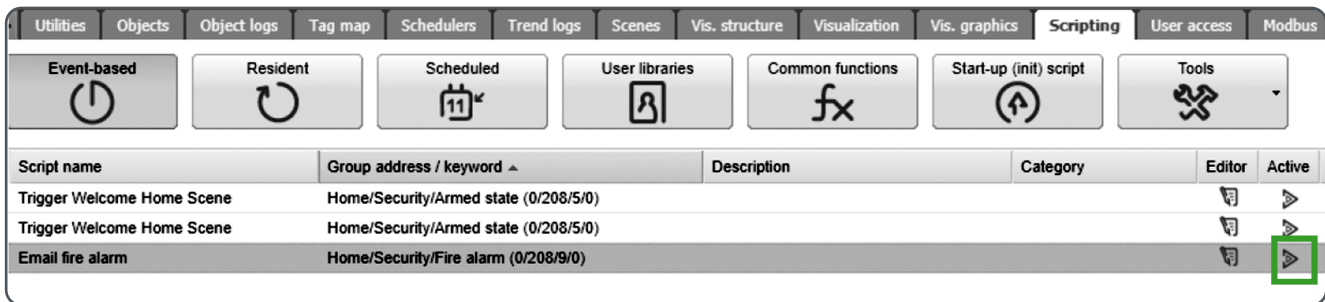
Enter a valid email address instead of *user@example.com* at Line 15 in the above example.



To enable email settings, refer to the section *E-mail* on page 179.

Click **Run script**, then **Save**.

In the **Scripts** tab, select **Event-based**, and the event *Email fire alarm* will appear with a green arrow indicating *Active* status.



Test by setting the C-Bus Diagnostic Utility to send a *Fire Alarm Cleared* message followed by a *Fire Alarm Raised* message on Zone 1 by changing the value to *Fire Alarm Raised* and checking for the email.

4.7.7 Multi-Room Audio and Media Transport Control – Control C-Bus

The Controller supports Multi-Room Audio (MRA) and Media Transport Control (MTC) applications, which can be controlled by C-Bus Matrix Switcher and Amplifier, and status information can be obtained from the Controller. This section explains how to set up the Controller to support MRA and MTC applications.

Prerequisites

The following Application Notes, must be read and configured before completing any MRA installation:

- Configuring MRA in Toolkit Software
- Configuring MRA with MRAPA Software
- Configuring MRA with Piced Software, and
- Configuring C-Bus Ripple Software.

Importantly, the settings and configurations must be completed for the following devices:

- one Matrix Switcher
- one Amp
- one EDLT, and
- a Ripple media server.

MRA Objects

An MRA object address must be specified by a network number, zone number and a function address. The Controller does not use Matrix Switcher number in MRA objects, therefore the zone number is used to configure both Matrix Switcher number and zone number used in Toolkit, PICED and MRAPA. See *Table 13* for Zone number mapping.

Table 13: Zone numbers for MRA objects

Zone Number in Controller	Matrix Switch Number	Zone number in Toolkit, PICED and MRAPA
0	1	1
1	1	2
2	1	3
3	1	4
4	1	5
5	1	6
6	1	7
7	1	8
8	2	1
9	2	2
10	2	3
11	2	4
12	2	5
13	2	6
14	2	7
15	2	8
16	3	1
17	3	2
18	3	3
19	3	4
20	3	5
21	3	6
22	3	7
23	3	8
24	4	1
25	4	2
26	4	3
27	4	4
28	4	5
29	4	6
30	4	7
31	4	8

The MRA object's function address could be from 0 to 10, as shown in *Table 14*.

Table 14: MRA object function addresses

Function Address	Meaning	Value Type	Value Range	Access Type
0	Volume	int	0-255	R/W
1	Balance	int	0-255	R/W
2	Bass	int	0-255	R/W
3	Treble	int	0-255	R/W
4	Mute	int	0, 2, 5, 7, 255 0 – Turn amplifier off. 2 (1%) – Turn amplifier on, Volume normal and speakers off. 5 (2%) – Turn amplifier on, Volume at pre-set and speakers off. 7 (3%) – Turn amplifier on, Volume at pre-set and speakers on. 255 (100%) – Turn amplifier on, Volume normal and speakers on.	R/W
5	Source Number	int	0-6 (As defined 1-7 in MARPA)	R/W
6	Dynamic 1 Label	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
7	Dynamic 2 Label	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
8	Source Descriptor	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
9	Zone Descriptor	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
10	MRA Command	string	See Table 3	See Table 3

MRA command is a predefined string command with one or additional parameters. See *Table 15* for MRA command definitions.

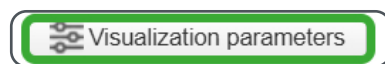


Table 15: MRA command definitions

Predefined Command	P1	P2	Description	Example	Access Type
Next Feed	N/A	N/A	Go to next feed/source	"Next Feed"	R/W
Previous Feed	N/A	N/A	Go to previous feed/ source	"Previous Feed"	R/W
All Off	N/A	N/A	Send an All Off command to all zones	"All Off"	R/W
Zone Descriptor Request	N/A	N/A	Request zone description	"Zone Descriptor Request"	R/W
Feed Descriptor Request	N/A	N/A	Request feed/source description	"Feed Descriptor Request"	R/W
Current Feed Request	N/A	N/A	Request current feed/ source description	"Current Feed Request"	R/W
Dynamic1	N/A	N/A	Dynamic1 is pressed	"Dynamic1"	R/W
Dynamic2	N/A	N/A	Dynamic2 is pressed	"Dynamic2"	R/W
Priority On	level	feed	Set high priority on	"Priority On:80:3"	R/W
Priority Off	N/A	N/A	Set high priority off	"Priority Off"	R/W
Set Off Timer	time to off (in minutes)	N/A	Set power off timer	"Set Off Timer:120"	R/W
Cancel Off Timer	N/A	N/A	Cancel power off timer	"Cancel Off Timer"	R/W
Error Code	Error code number	N/A	Report error code	"Error Code:20"	R/W
Status Request	N/A	N/A	Request status	"Status Request"	R/W
Off Timer Expired	N/A	N/A	This is a notification when power off timer is expired. Read only.	"Off Timer Expired"	R

MTC Objects

A MTC object address must be specified by a network number, media link group and a function address. A MTC object's function address is from 0 to 32, *Table 16* has the details.

Table 16: MTC object function addresses

Function Address	Meaning	Value Type	Value Range	Access Type
0	Play Stop	int	0:stop, 1:play	R/W
1	Pause Resume	int	0:pause, 255:resume	R/W
2	Category	int	0-127	R/W
3	Selection	int	0-32767	R/W
4	Track	int	0-2147483647	R/W
5	Shuffle	int	0: shuffle off, 255: shuffle on	R/W
6	Repeat	int	0: repeat off, 1: repeat current, 255: repeat all	R/W
7	Forward	int	0: normal speed, 2: 2x speed, 4: 4x speed, 6: 8x speed, 8: 16x speed, 10: 32x speed, 12: 64x speed	R/W
8	Rewind	int	0: normal speed, 2: 2x speed, 4: 4x speed, 6: 8x speed, 8: 16x speed, 10: 32x speed, 12: 64x speed	R/W

Function Address	Meaning	Value Type	Value Range	Access Type
9	Source Power Control	int	0: source power off, 255: source power on	R/W
10	Total Tracks	int	0-2147483647	R/W
11	Current Track Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
12	Current Selection Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
13	Current Category Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
14	Next Track Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
15	Next Selection Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
16	Next Category Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
17	Previous Track Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
18	Previous Selection Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
19	Previous Category Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
20	Next2 Track Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
21	Next2 Selection Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
22	Next2 Category Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
23	Previous2 Track Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
24	Previous2 Selection Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
25	Previous2 Category Name	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
26	MTC Command	string	See <i>Table 17</i>	See <i>Table 17</i>
27	Enumerate Category Size	int	0-255	R/W
28	Enumerate Selection Size	int	0-255	R/W
29	Enumerate Track Size	int	0-255	R/W
30	Enumerate Category Names	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
31	Enumerate Selection Names	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W
32	Enumerate Track Names	string	Max 255 bytes	R/W

MTC command is a predefined string command with some commands having one or two additional parameters. Parameter is followed by the command and separated by “:”.

Table 17: MTC command objects

Predefined Command	P1	P2	Description	Example	Access Type
Next Category	N/A	N/A	Go to next category	“Next Category”	R/W
Previous Category	N/A	N/A	Go to previous category	“Previous Category”	R/W
Next Selection	N/A	N/A	Go to next selection	“Next Selection”	R/W
Previous Selection	N/A	N/A	Go to previous selection	“Previous Selection”	R/W
Next Track	N/A	N/A	Go to next track	“Next Track”	R/W
Previous Track	N/A	N/A	Go to previous track	“Previous Track”	R/W
Media Status	N/A	N/A	Request media status	“Media Status”	R/W
Enumerate Categories	start	N/A	Enumerate Categories	“Enumerate Categories:0”	R/W
Enumerate Selections	start	N/A	Enumerate Selections	“Enumerate Selections:0”	R/W
Enumerate Tracks	start	N/A	Enumerate Tracks	“Enumerate Tracks:0”	R/W

Example project

Prior to commencing an example project, compile a list of each source (an input into the MRA system) and zone (an area where an amplifier is installed). *Table 18* on page 79 and *Table 19* on page 79 show the sources and zones for an example project. These examples are used throughout the series of MRA programming application notes.

In *Table 15* Media Sources, the left column shows the source name, which is fixed in MRA. The middle column shows the type of input, while the right column shows a 'real world' name or description applied for easy identification. *Table 16* Output zones shows eight zones (or locations).

Table 18: Media sources

Source	Type	Description
Local*	Line-level input on amplifier	iPod
Analogue 1	Line-level input #1 into Matrix Switcher	Cable TV
Analogue 2	Line-level input #2 into Matrix Switcher	DVD
Analogue 4/AUX**	RCA sockets on the rear panel of the Matrix Switcher 3.5mm AUX input socket on front panel of Matrix Switcher	AUX
Tuner 1	Internal AM/FM tuner	Radio 1
Tuner 2	Internal AM/FM tuner	Radio 2
Streaming	Internal Streaming Module (deluxe model of Matrix Switcher only)	MP3

* The local input on the amplifier does not need to be configured for operation, but its position is reserved. This allows for a total of six additional source inputs to be configured on the Matrix Switcher

** The 3.5mm AUX socket on the front of the matrix switcher is internally (electrically) connected to Analogue Input 4. Either the AUX socket OR Analogue input 4 may be used, not both.

Table 19: Output zones

Zone No*	Description (location)
Zone 0	Living
Zone 1	Bathroom
Zone 2	Bedroom
Zone 3	Ensuite
Zone 4	Patio
Zone 5	Pool area
Zone 6	Dining
Zone 7	Study

* The zone number is from 0 to 7, which is corresponding to Matrix Switcher 1 and zone number 1 to 8 in Toolkit, MARPA and PICED settings. See *Table 13* for details.

Media Link Group

The following media link groups are used for Streaming Audio, Radio 1 and Radio 2.

- Media Link Group 000 – Streaming Audio
- Media Link Group 001 – Radio Tuner 1, and
- Media Link Group 002 – Radio Tuner 2.

Table 20 shows all MRA objects used in the example project.

Table 20: MRA objects used in the example project

Network	Application	Zone Number	Function
Home(Local)	MRA	0	Volume
Home(Local)	MRA	0	Dynamic 1 Label
Home(Local)	MRA	0	Dynamic 2 Label
Home(Local)	MRA	0	MRA Command

Table 21 on page 80 shows all MTC objects used in the example project.

Table 21: Objects used in the example project

Network	Application	Media Link Group	Function
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Streaming Audio (0)	Play/Stop
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Streaming Audio (0)	Current Track Name
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Streaming Audio (0)	Current Selection Name
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Streaming Audio (0)	Current Category Name
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Streaming Audio (0)	MTC Command
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Radio Tuner 1	Current Selection Name
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Radio Tuner 1	MTC Command
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Radio Tuner 2	Current Selection Name
Home(Local)	Media Transport	Radio Tuner 2	MTC Command

This example project explains how to control C-Bus media system using a Controller. These steps detail how to create control objects for zone 0. The steps for other zones are similar.

Create MRA Related Objects

Path: **Configurator** → **Objects** tab → **Add new object** .

In **Edit object** window enter:

- **Network** select *Home (Local)*
- **Application** select *MRA - 205*
- **Zone Number** select *0*
- **Parameter** select *Volume*.

Click **Save**.

Add the remaining objects in *Table 20* on page 80. The object window will display all four entries in the object screen.

Name	Group address ▲
Home/MRA/Zone 0/Volume	0/205/0/0
Home/MRA/Zone 0/Dynamic1 LABEL	0/205/0/6
Home/MRA/Zone 0/Dynamic2 LABEL	0/205/0/7
Home/MRA/Zone 0/MRA Command	0/205/0/10

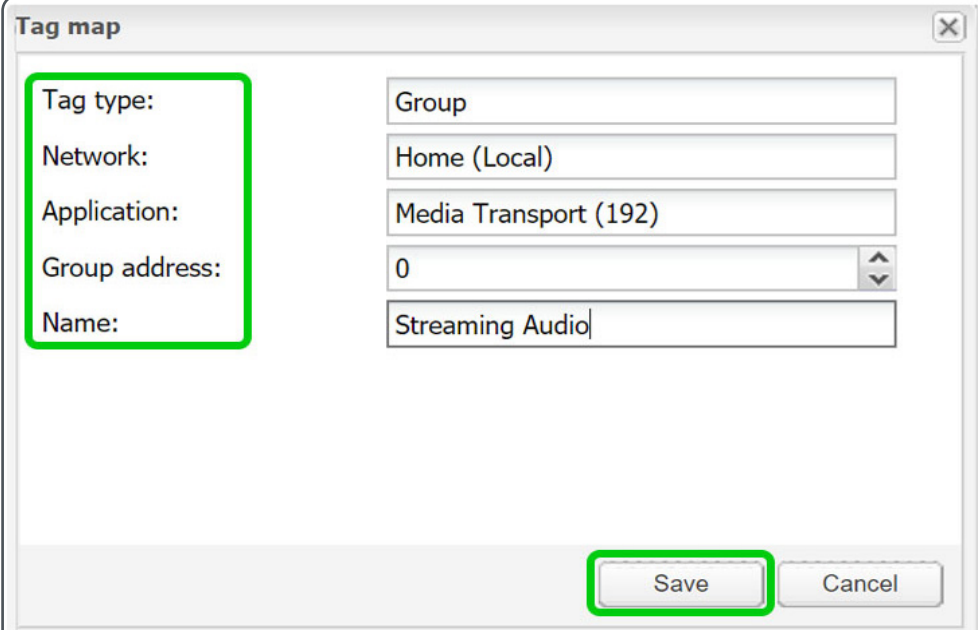
Create MTC related objects

Path: **Configurator** → **Objects** tab → **Add new object**.

In **Edit object** window box enter:

- **Network** select *Home (Local)*
- **Application** select *Media Transport*
- **Media Link Group** select *0*
- **Parameter** enter *Streaming Audio*.

Click **Save**.

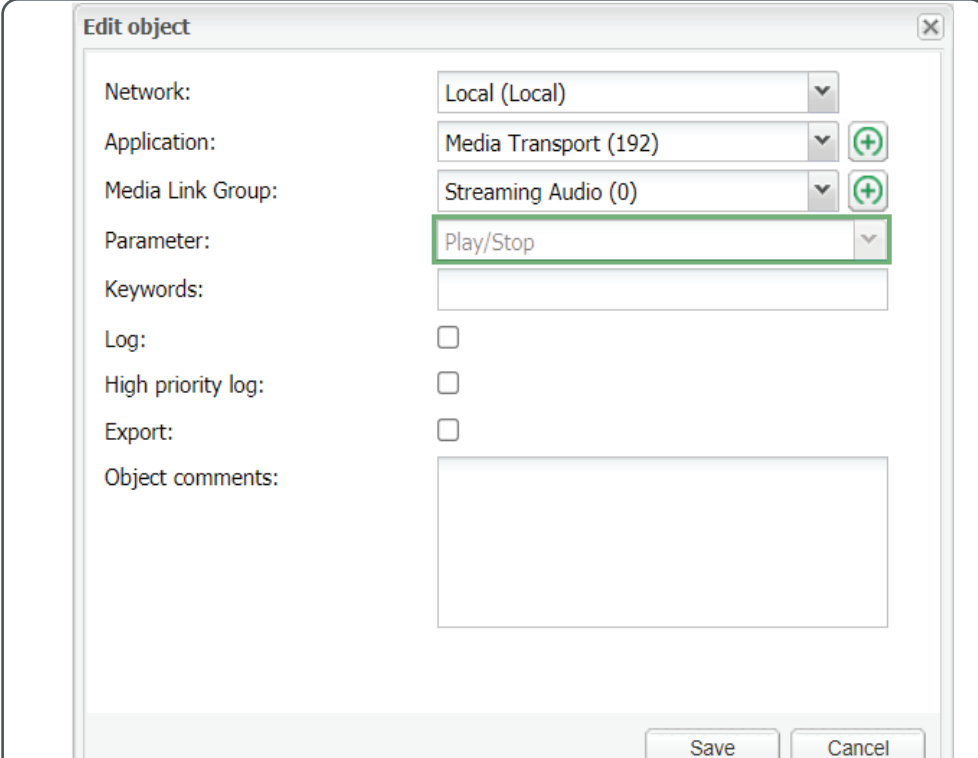


The 'Tag map' dialog box contains the following fields:

Tag type:	Group
Network:	Home (Local)
Application:	Media Transport (192)
Group address:	0
Name:	Streaming Audio

Buttons: Save, Cancel

At **Parameter** select **Play/Stop**.



The 'Edit object' dialog box contains the following fields:

Network:	Local (Local)
Application:	Media Transport (192)
Media Link Group:	Streaming Audio (0)
Parameter:	Play/Stop
Keywords:	
Log:	<input type="checkbox"/>
High priority log:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Export:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Object comments:	

Buttons: Save, Cancel

Add the remaining objects listed in *Table 21* on page 80.

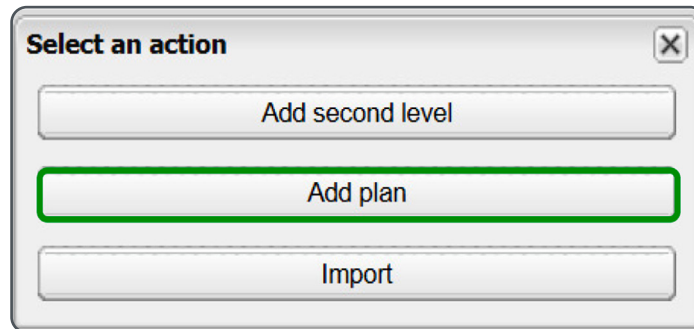
Click **Save**.

Add the other objects listed in *Table 16* on page 77.

Add an MRA/MTC user interface page/plan

Path: **Configurator** → **Vis. Structure** tab → Add/Import .

At **Select an action** select **Add plan**.



At the **Plan** window appears, enter *Media - Living* in the **Name** field and then click **Save**.

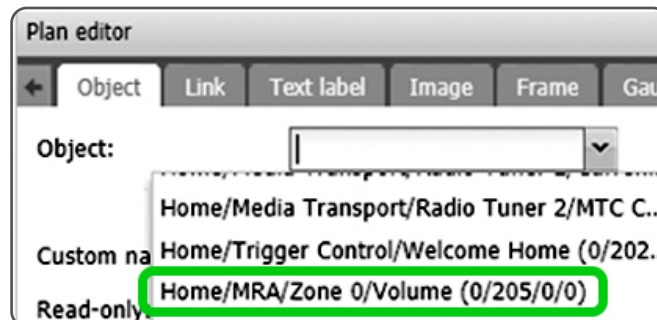
Create visualization elements for media living page/plan

Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** → **Media Living** page → **Unlock current plan for editing**.

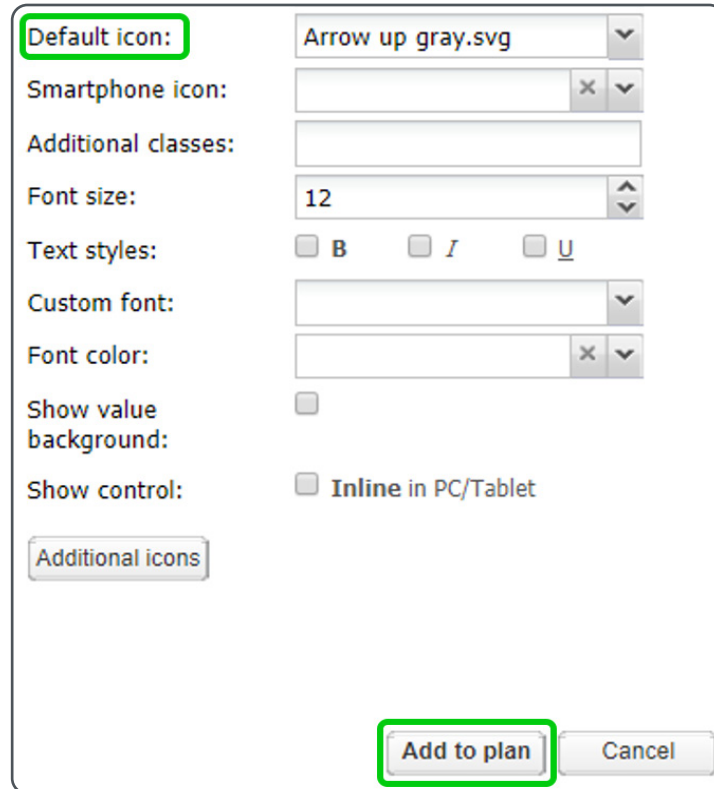
Ensure no visual elements are selected in the page/plan.

In the Plan editor, select the **Object** tab.

At the **Object** dropdown, select **Home/MRA/Zone 0/Volume (0/205/0/0)**.



Change the **Default icon** to a volume icon.



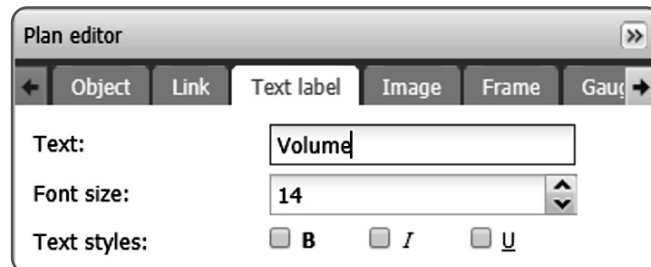
Click **Add to plan**.

Drag to a desired location and click **Apply**.

To add a text label, click the **Text label** tab.

Enter text in the **Text** field.

Adjust any preferred font characteristics, then click **Add to Plan**.



Drag the text label to the preferred location on page.



Repeat the steps for **Dynamic 1 Label** and **Dynamic 2 Label**.

Click **Save and reload plan**.

Add MRA Command Object

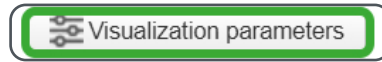
Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** → **Media Living** page → **Unlock current plan for editing**.

Ensure no visual elements are selected in the page/plan.

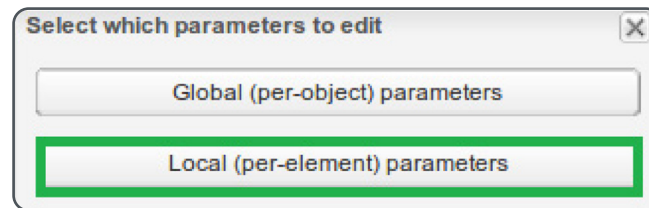
In Plan editor, select the **Object** tab.

At the **Object** dropdown, select **Home/MRA/Zone 0/MRA Command (0/205/0/10)**.

Click **Visualization parameters**.

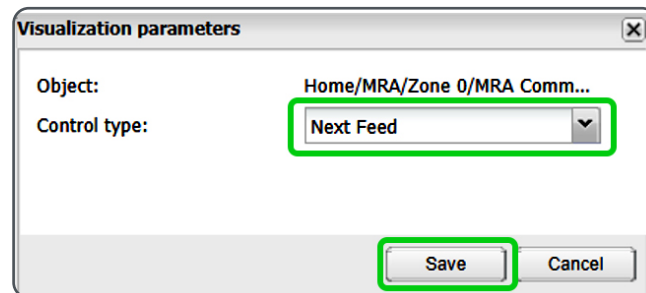


At **Select which parameters to edit** window click **Local (per-element) parameters**.



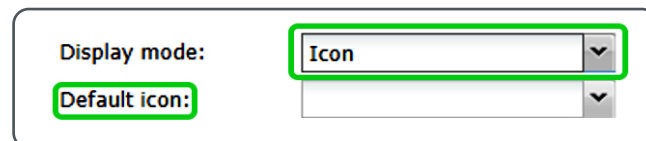
At **Visualization parameters** window click **Control Type** box **Next Feed**.

Click **Save**.



In Plan editor change the **Display mode** to **Icon**.

At **Default icon** select a preferred icon.



Click **Add to plan**.

Drag the icon to a preferred location on the plan.

In Plan editor, select the **Text label** tab, and enter Text = **Next Source/Feed**.
Change any font preferences.

Click **Add to plan**.

Drag the text label to the preferred location next to the icon.

Click **Save and reload plan**.

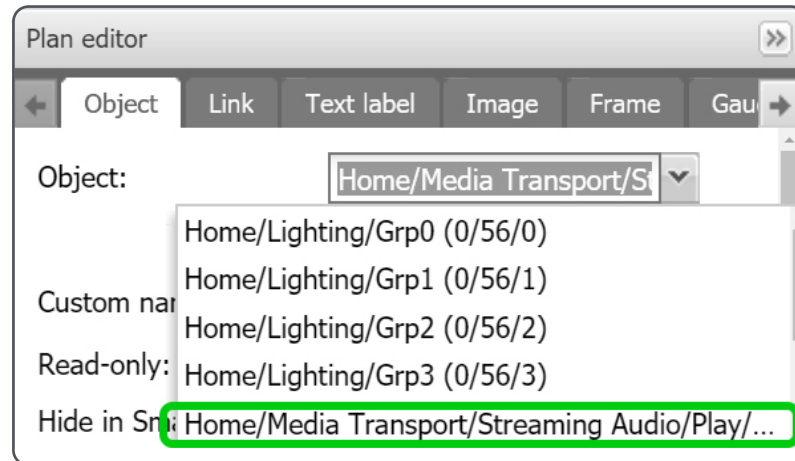
Adding visual elements for MTC objects

Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** → **Media Living** page → **Unlock current plan for editing**.

Ensure no visual elements are selected in the page/plan.

In Plan editor, select the **Object** tab.

At the **Object** dropdown, select **Home/Media Transport/Streaming Audio/Play/Stop (0/192/0/0)**.

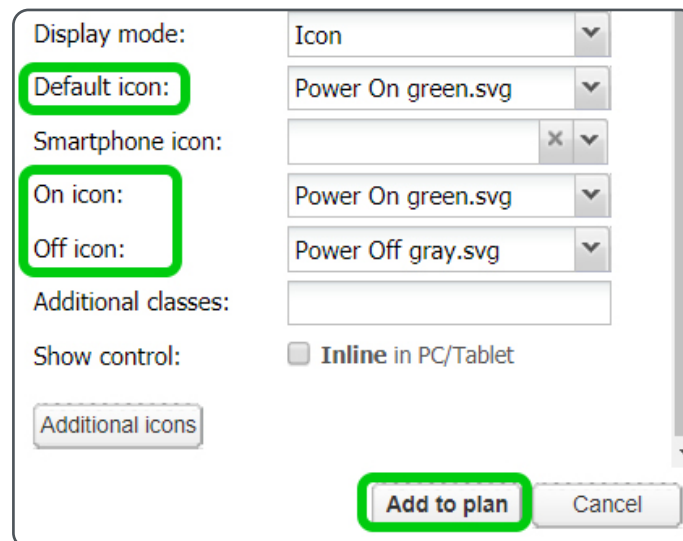


At Display mode select **Icon**.

Select the preferred **Default icon** from the dropdown.

Set the **On icon** to a preferred On Icon from the **Select Image** window.

Set the **Off icon** to a preferred Off Icon from the **Select Image** window.



Click **Add to plan**.

Drag the icon to a preferred location on the plan, then select the icon, and in Plan Editor, select the **Text label** tab.

Enter text = **Play/Stop**.

Adjust any preferred font characteristics, then click **Add to plan**.

Move the label to the desired position above the icon in the plan.

Click **Save and reload plan**.

Adding other visual elements

Ensure no visual elements are selected in the page/plan.

Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** → **Media Living** page → **Unlock current plan for editing**.

In Plan editor, select the **Object** tab.

At the **Object** dropdown, select **Home/Media Transport/Streaming Audio/Current Track Name (0/192/0/11)**.

At **Default icon** select a preferred icon.

Click **Add to plan**.

Drag the icon to preferred location on the plan, and from **Plan Editor/Text label**, enter **Text = Streaming: Current Track Name**.

Adjust any font characteristics to Text label, then click **Add to Plan**.

Adjust the Text label to preferred location next to icon. Click **Save and reload plan**.

Repeat the steps to add visualization elements for the objects:

- Streaming Audio (0)\Current Selection Name
- Streaming Audio (0)\Current Category Name
- Current Selection Name\Radio Tuner 1
- Current Selection Name\Radio Tuner 2.

Adding MTC command visual element

Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** → **Media Living** page → **Unlock current plan for editing**.

Ensure no visual elements are selected in the page/plan.

In Plan editor, select the **Object** tab.

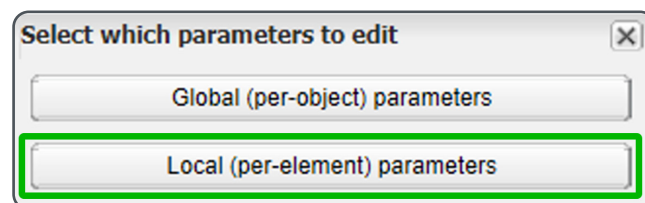
At the **Object** dropdown, select **Home/Media Transport/Streaming Audio/MTC Command (0/192/0/26) - Living**.

At Display mode select **Icon**.

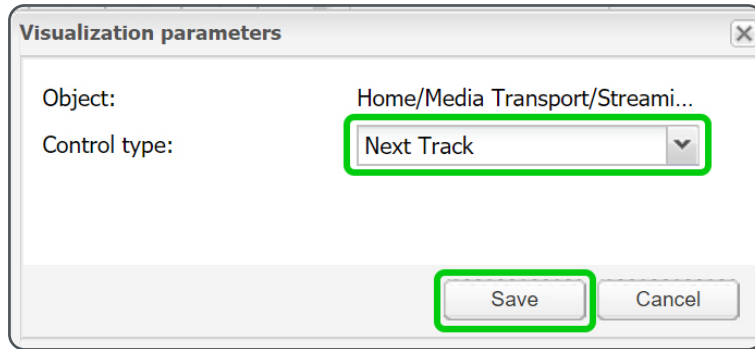
Select the preferred **Default Icon** from the dropdown.

Click **Visualization parameters**.

At **Select which parameters to edit** window click **Local (per-element) parameters**.



At **Visualization parameters** window click **Control Type** box **Next Track**.
Click **Save**.

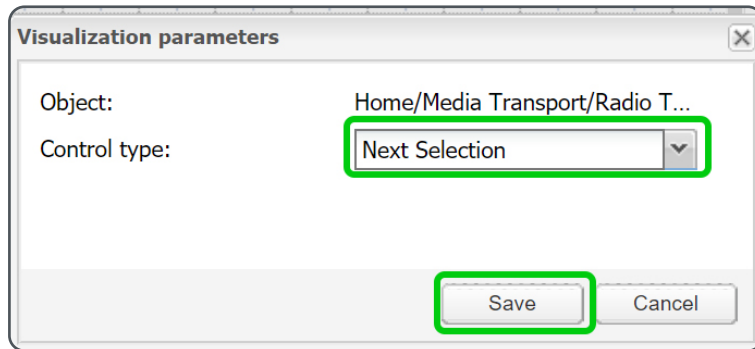


In Plan Editor, click **Add to plan**.

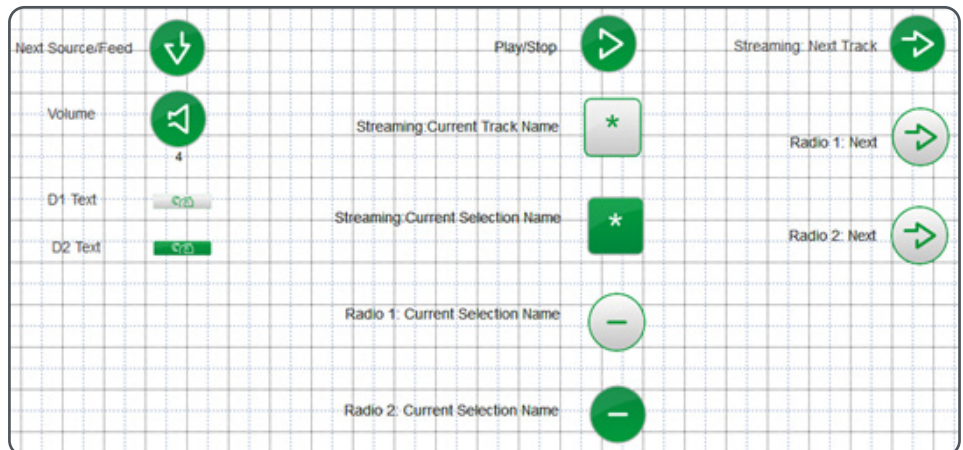
Drag the icon to a desired and add a text label **Next Track**.

Repeat the steps to add visualization elements for the objects:

- Home/Media Transport/Radio Tuner 1/MTC Command (0/192/1/26)
- Home/Media Transport/Radio Tuner 2/MTC Command (0/192/2/26). In Visualization parameters for this object change the **Control Type** to **Next Selection**.



When the example project plan displays similar to this plan, click **Save and reload plan**.



4.7.8 Error application

C-Bus error reporting can be added to your Controller through use of the C-Bus Error application. The Error Application is used for monitoring events and notifications in the C-Bus system.

Table 22 shows an office with two C-Bus devices that support error reporting (two 4-channel universal dimmer with device ID 7 and device ID 8).

Table 22: C-Bus Error report enabled device in an office

Installed location	C-Bus device
Break Room	universal dimmer channel 0
Office 1	universal dimmer channel 1
Office 2	universal dimmer channel 2
Office 3	universal dimmer channel 3
Office 4	universal dimmer 2 channel 0
Office 5	universal dimmer 2 channel 1

The Virtual devices are used to aggregate errors from multiple channels and devices. There are three types of virtual errors:

- **Project Error** – Aggregate any error seen by the Controller
- **Network Error** – Aggregate any error seen on the associated network by the Controller
- **Channel Aggregate Error** – Aggregate any error seen for the associated Device Type and Device ID by the Controller.

Note:

The Channel Aggregate Error also has an option to make it native (*Native Error* check box).

If this option is selected, the value for channel aggregate error object will be provided by end device. If this option is not selected, the NAC will calculate object value manually.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit object" with the following fields and options:

- Object: Office/Error/UniDim/Channel Aggregate Ero...
- Device Type: Universal Dimmer (dropdown menu)
- Native Error:
- Keywords: CAE-7, (text input)
- Log:
- High priority log:
- Export:
- Object comments: CAE-7 (text area)

At the bottom, there is a note: **Note:** Native Error - If this option is checked, value for object will be provided by end device. If this option is not checked, NAC will calculate object value manually. Below the note are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons.

Each of the physical/virtual object support **most severe** and **most recent** error types. Each physical/virtual object has a unique address assigned to it. **Most recent** error messages reflect the present status of the error condition. **Most severe** error messages reflect the most severe error condition which has existed since the condition was last cleared.

Table 23 shows the physical objects created for this example project in the Controller, assuming the local network (net ID = 0) is tagged as Office.

Table 23: Physical error objects

Name	Group Address	Error Type	Device ID	Device Type	Channel
Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch0	0/206/7/0	Device	7	Universal Dimmer	0
Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch1	0/206/7/1	Device	7	Universal Dimmerl	1
Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch2	0/206/7/2	Device	7	Universal Dimmer	2
Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch3	0/206/7/3	Device	7	Universal Dimmer	3
Office/Error App/UniDim2/UD-Ch0	0/206/8/0	Device	8	Universal Dimmer	0
Office/Error App/UniDim2/UD-Ch1	0/206/8/1	Device	8	Universal Dimmer	1

Table 24: Channel Aggregate Error

Name	Group Address	Error Type	Device ID	Device Type	Channel
Office/Error App/UniDim/Channel Aggregate Error	0/206/7/251	Device	7	Universal Dimmer	251
Office/Error App/UniDim2/Channel Aggregate Error	0/206/8/251	Device	8	Universal Dimmer	251

Table 25: Network and Project Error

Name	Group Address	Error Type	Device ID	Device Type	Channel
Office/Error App/Network Error	0/206/255	Network	255	NA	NA

Network 255/ Error/Project Error	255/206/255	Project	255	NA	NA
--	-------------	---------	-----	----	----

Note: Device id for Network error and project error will be automatically considered as 255 while creating network/project error object from NAC UI.

Similarly, Network id for project error will be automatically considered as 255 while creating project error object from NAC UI.

Table 23, Table 24 and Table 25 on page 90 and page 91 shows that *Office/Error App/UniDim/ChannelAggregateError*, *Office/Error App/Network Error*, *Network 255/Error/Project Error* are all virtual errors as their values are only updated by logic and based on their children's value. For instance, *Office/Error/UniDim* with Device id 7 has 4 physical children:

- Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch0
- Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch1
- Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch2
- Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch3

Example project: Creating related error objects

Path: **Configurator** → **Objects** tab → **Add new object** button.

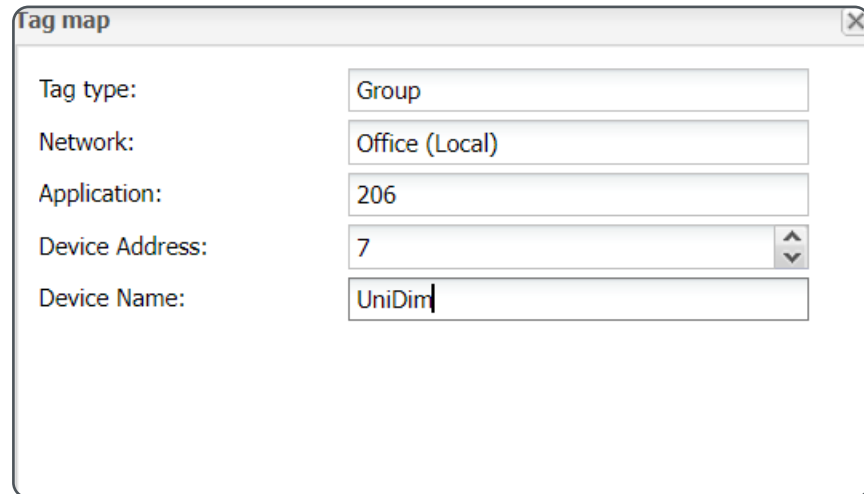
In the **Edit object** window, at **Application** select *Error (206)* from the drop down list.

At **Device id** click the + sign to add a device address.

In the **Tag Map** window enter **Device address** = 7.

In the **Name** box enter *UniDim*.

Click **Save**.



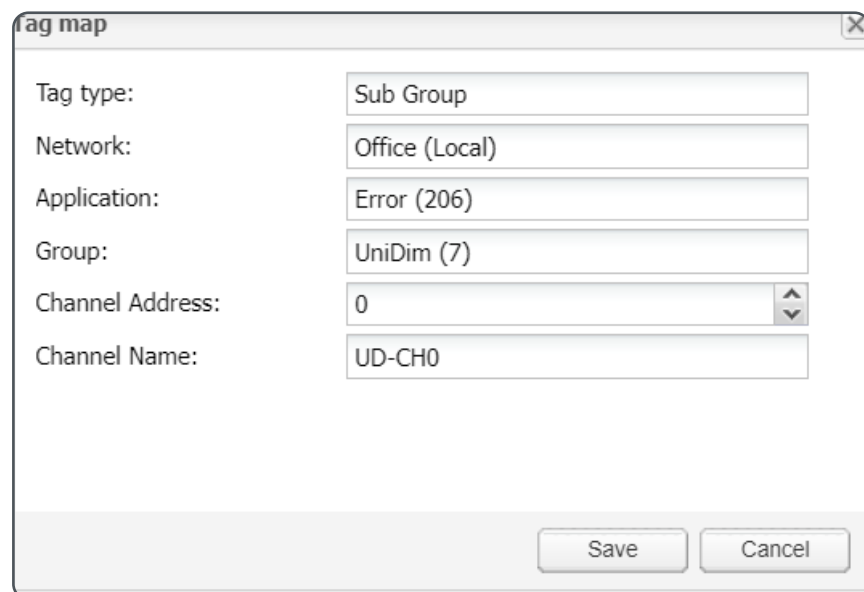
The 'Tag map' dialog box contains the following fields and values:

Tag type:	Group
Network:	Office (Local)
Application:	206
Device Address:	7
Device Name:	UniDim

At **Device type** select *Universal Dimmer*.

At **Error type** select *Channel Error*.

At **Channel** click the + sign to add channel address.



The 'Tag map' dialog box contains the following fields and values:

Tag type:	Sub Group
Network:	Office (Local)
Application:	Error (206)
Group:	UniDim (7)
Channel Address:	0
Channel Name:	UD-CH0

Buttons: Save, Cancel

In the **Tag Map** window **Channel address** = 0.

In the **Name** box enter *UD-CH0*.

Click **Save**. The first error object is now created.

Edit object

Application: Error (206) (+)

Error Object Type: Device Error

Network: Office (Local)

Device Id: UniDim (7) (+)

Device Type: Universal Dimmer

Error Type: Channel Error

Channel: UD-CH0 (0) (+)

Keywords:

Log:

High priority log:

Export:

Object comments:

Repeat the steps until all channel error objects in *Table 24* on page 91 are created, and then repeat the steps until Network/Project error objects in *Table 25* on page 91 are created. The finished objects are shown below:

Name	Group address..
Office/Error/UniDim/UD-CH0	0/206/7/0
Office/Error/UniDim/UD-CH1	0/206/7/1
Office/Error/UniDim/UD-CH2	0/206/7/2
Office/Error/UniDim/UD-CH3	0/206/7/3
Office/Error/UniDim/Channel Aggregate Error	0/206/7/251
Office/Error/UniDim2/UD-Ch0	0/206/8/0
Office/Error/UniDim2/UD-Ch1	0/206/8/1
Office/Error/UniDim2/Channel Aggregate Error	0/206/8/251
Office/Error/Network Error	0/206/255
Network 255/Error/Project Error	255/206/255

Preparing icons

Each object shown insee *Physical error objects* on page 91and *Table 24* on page 91 may have both error level and severity level. All C-Bus devices that support error reporting have five severity levels. The example in universal dimmer has seven error levels and key unit has no error levels.

View existing icons and add related icons if necessary. Prepare three icons for five severity levels:

- Green light for **All OK** and **OK**
- Yellow light for **Minor Failure**
- Red light for **General Failure** and **Extreme Failure**.

Prepare three icons ready for the five severity levels of the universal dimmer example

Path: **Configurator** → **Vis. Graphics** tab.

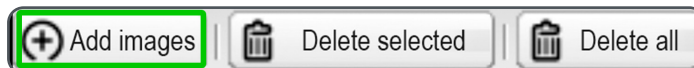
Repeat until all required icons are added.

If more icons are needed, click the **Add icons** button at bottom left.

Prepare image

Path: **Configurator** → **Vis. Graphics** tab → **Images/Backgrounds** tab.

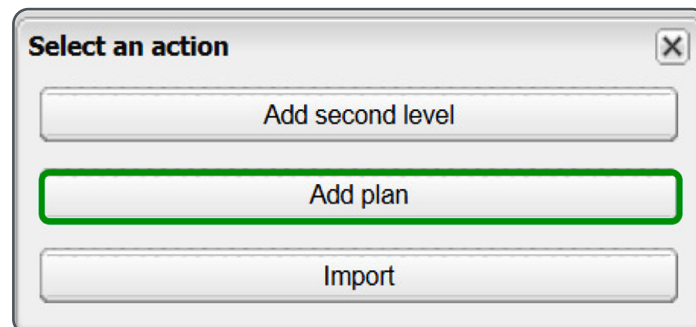
Click the **Add images** button to add a floor plan.



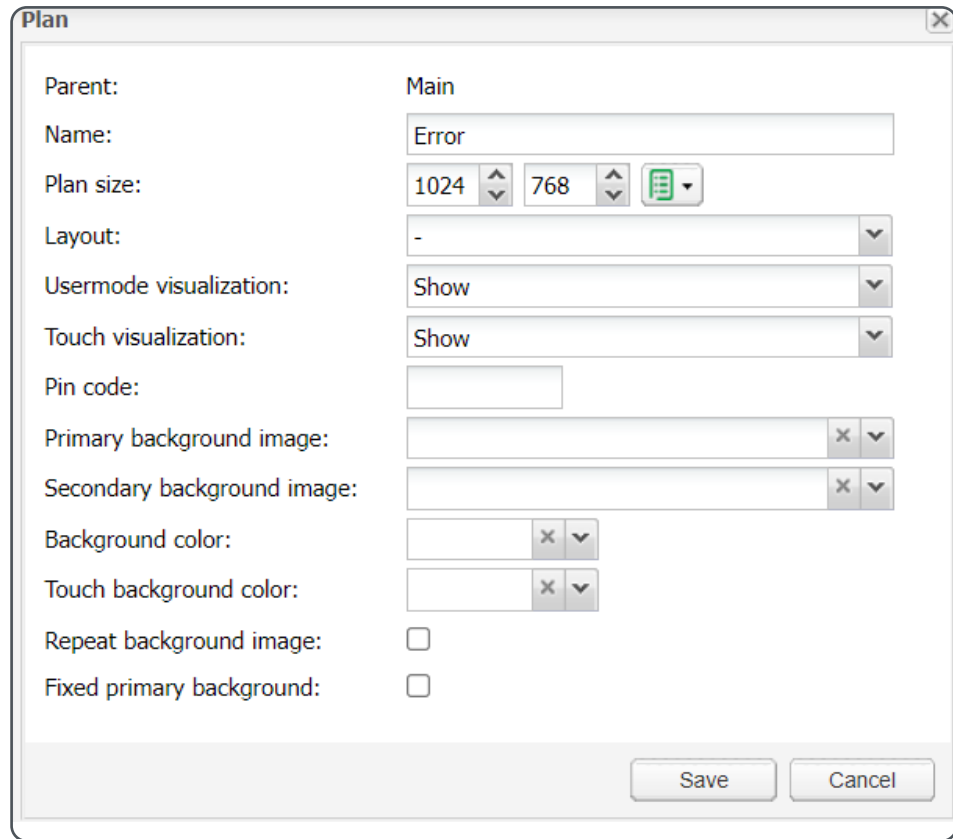
Add an error user interface/page plan

Path: **Configurator** → **Vis. Structure** tab → **Add/Import** .

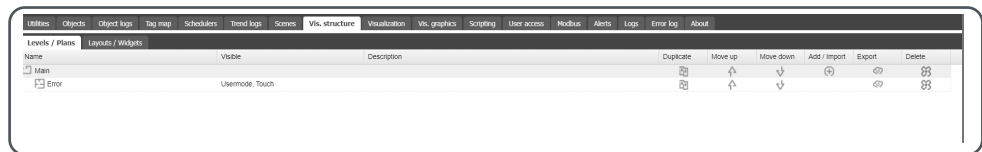
When the **Select an action** box appears, select **Add plan**.



When the **Plan** window appears, enter **Error** in the **Name** field and then click **Save**.



The Error page will now be visible in the **Vis. structure** tab.



Creating visualization elements for status and error messages on error page/plan

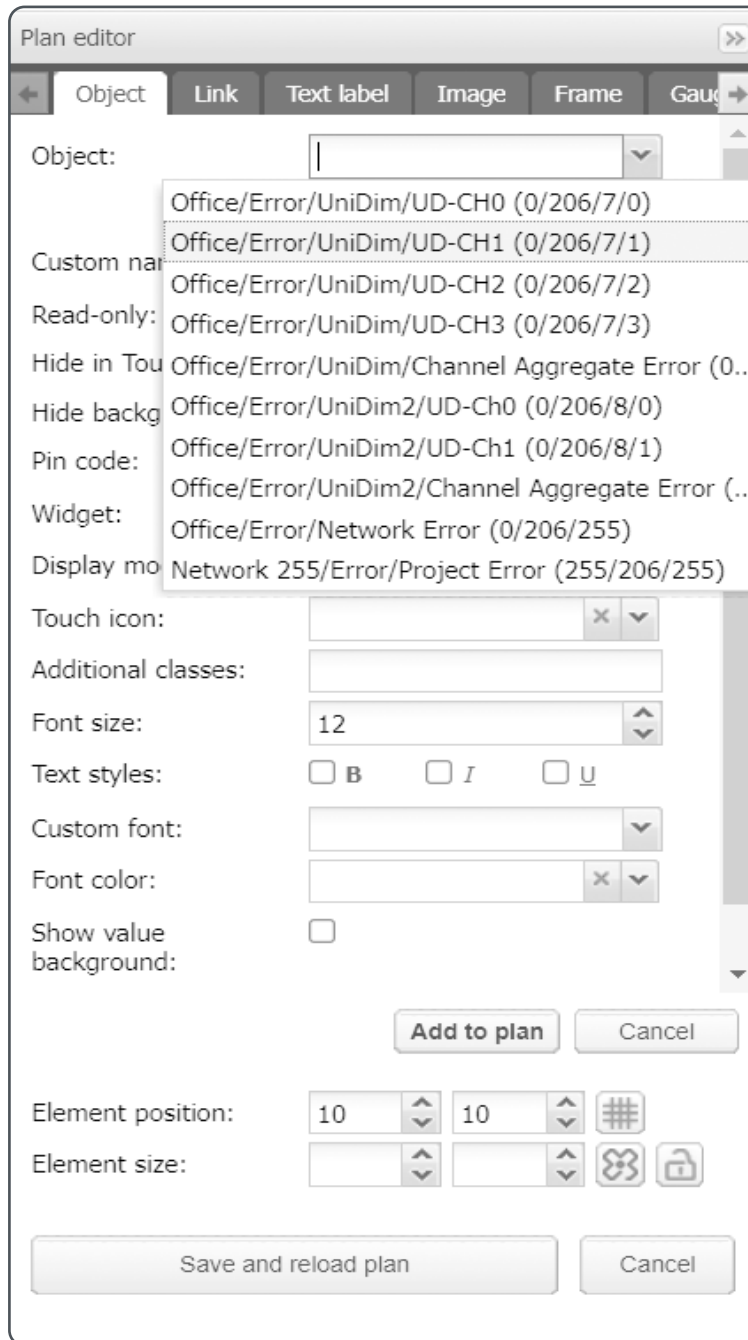
Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** tab → **Error page** from the structure view.

Click **Unlock current plan for editing**.

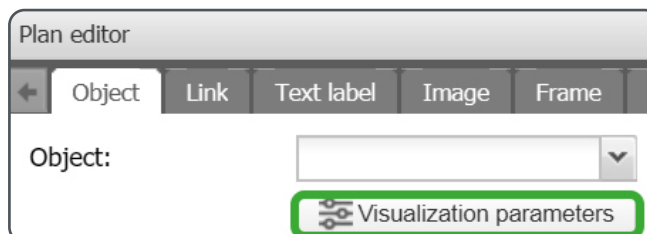


Click the **Object** tab in the right-hand panel of the Plan Editor.

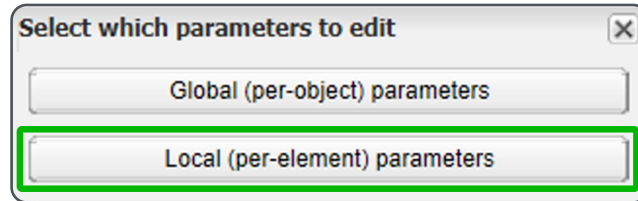
At **Object**, select **Office/Error/UniDim/UD-CH0(0/206/7/0)** from the drop-down list.



Click the **Visualization parameters** button.



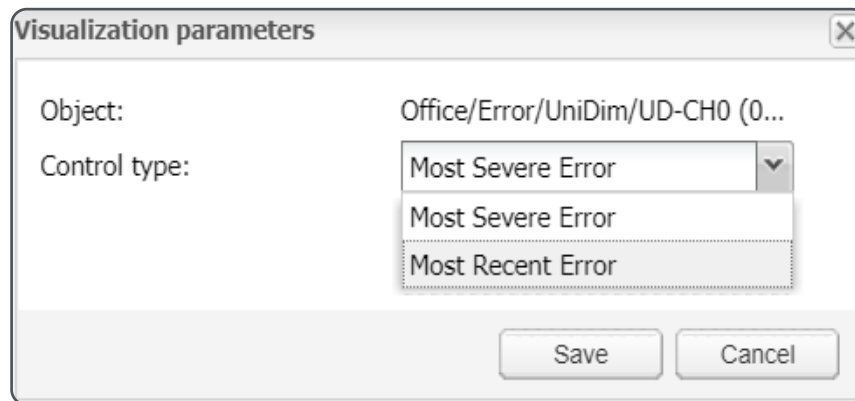
At **Select which parameters to edit** window click **Local (per-element) parameters**.



Each universal dimmer channel object has error and severity information (level values and text messages).

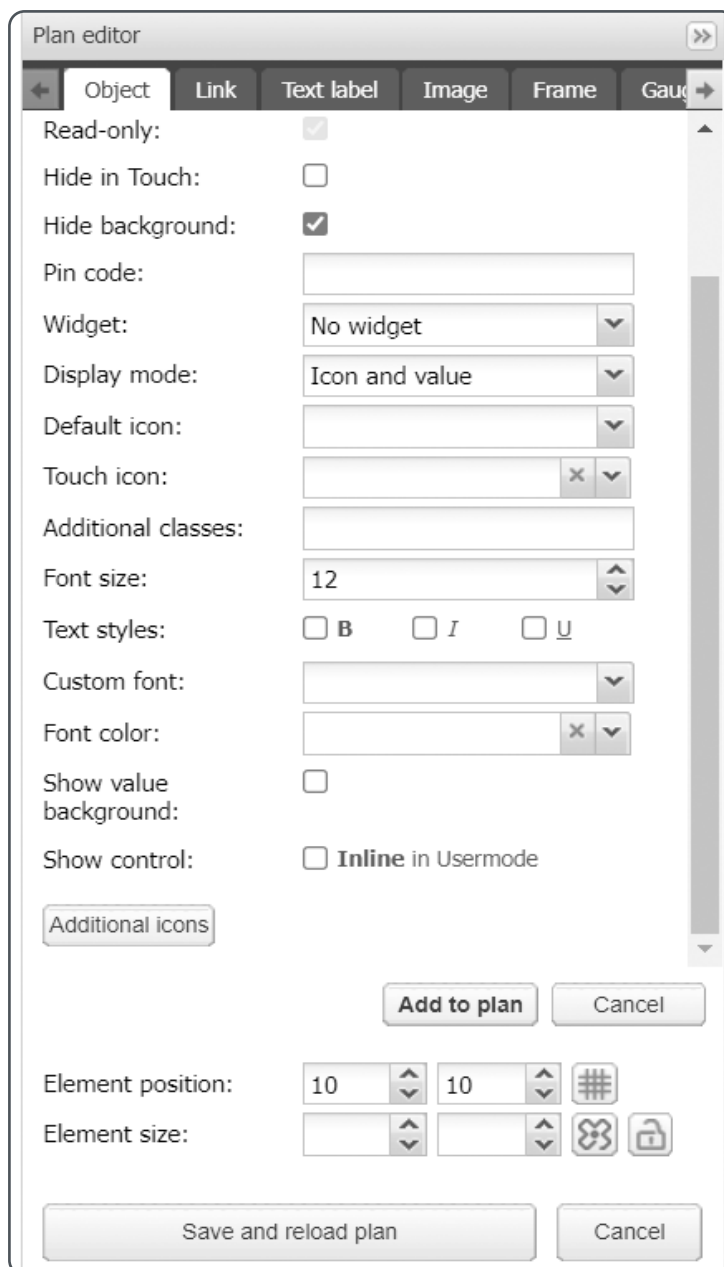
Set **Control type** as *Most Severe Error*.

Click the **Save** button.



In the **Object** tab of the Plan Editor, select a **Default icon** from the dropdown selection.

Click **Additional icons**.

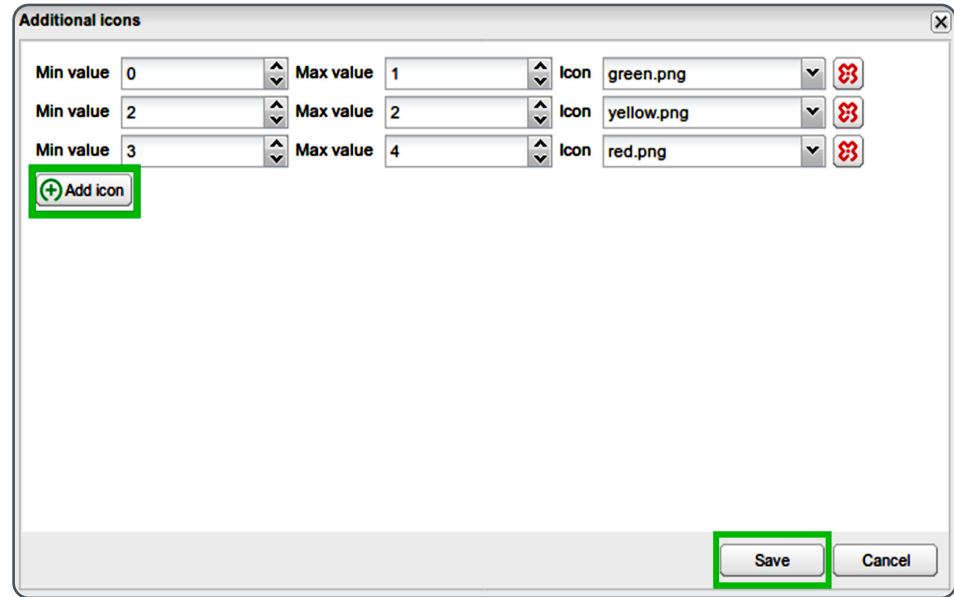


From the **Additional Icons** window, select *Add icon*.

Set the **Min Value** and **Max Value**.

Select the required icon from the **Icon** drop down, and repeat for all icons as required.

When all objects have been assigned an icon and values, click **Save**.

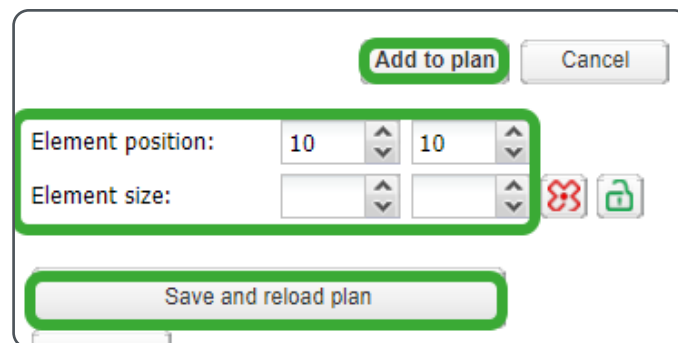


In the Plan Editor, select the **Object** tab, then click **Unlock current plan for editing**.

Click **Add to plan** to add new visual elements to the page.

Add to plan

Click **Apply** and then **Save and reload plan**.



Add a floor plan as the background

Path: **Configurator** → **Visualization** tab → **Error page** from the structure view.

Click the **Unlock current plan for editing**. Ensure no visual elements are selected in the page/plan.

In the Plan editor, select the **Image** tab.

At the **Select image** dropdown, select the required floor plan.

Change the **Element position** and **Element size** if required.

Click **Add to plan**.

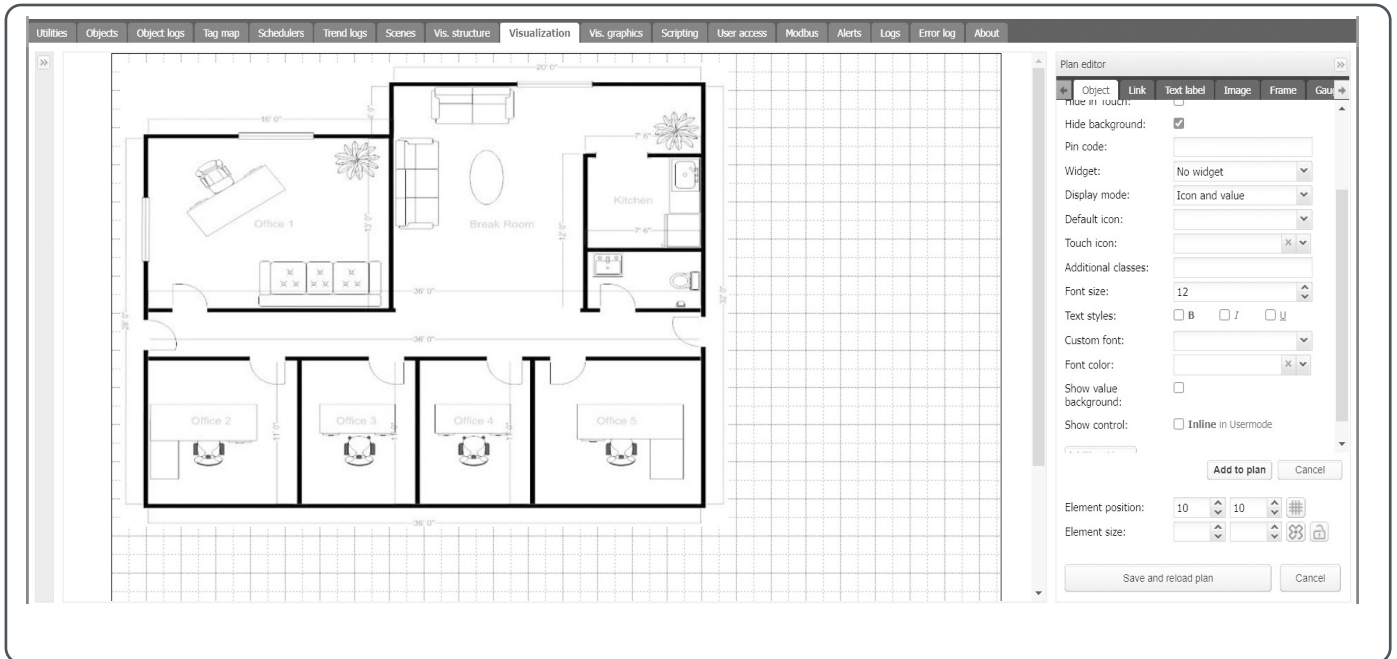
Rearrange the elements by dragging them to the floor plan.

Change their **Element** size if necessary.

To only display the icon on the floor plan, select the visual element and choose **Display Mode** = **Icon** for both elements.

Click **Apply** after finalising the changes.

Click **Save and reload plan**. The image will display like below:



Adding object elements

Add two visual elements (**Most severe** and **Most recent**) for object *Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch0* for Universal dimmer channel 0 on top of the Break room area. In the example, *Table 26* shows that we have two visual elements for Break room.

Table 26: Visual elements for the different areas in office space

Installed Location	C-Bus Device	Object Used
Break Room	universal dimmer channel 0	Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch0
Office 1	universal dimmer channel 1	Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch1
Office 2	universal dimmer channel 2	Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch2
Office 3	universal dimmer channel 3	Office/Error App/UniDim/UD-Ch3
Office 4	universal dimmer2 channel 0	Office/Error App/UniDim 2/UD-Ch0
Office 5	universal dimmer 2 channel1	Office/Error App/UniDim 2/UD-Ch1



Use the **Duplicate** button and then modify the copied elements to greatly speed up your task.

Arrange the icons based on *Table 26* on the floor plan image.



Adding virtual objects to the plan page

Add the virtual objects shown in *Table 27* to the plan/page, including the channel aggregate error objects for unit, network error and project error.

Table 27: Channel aggregate error for unit, network error and project error.

C-Bus Device	Object Used
Channel Aggregate error	Office/Error/UniDim/Channel Aggregate Error
Channel Aggregate error	Office/Error/UniDim2/Channel Aggregate Error
Network error	Office/Error/Network Error
Project error	Network 255/Error/Project Error

Based on *Table 27*, the following visualization shows all visual elements for this example.



Add text labels on the virtual device objects

To add a text label, click the **Text label** tab.

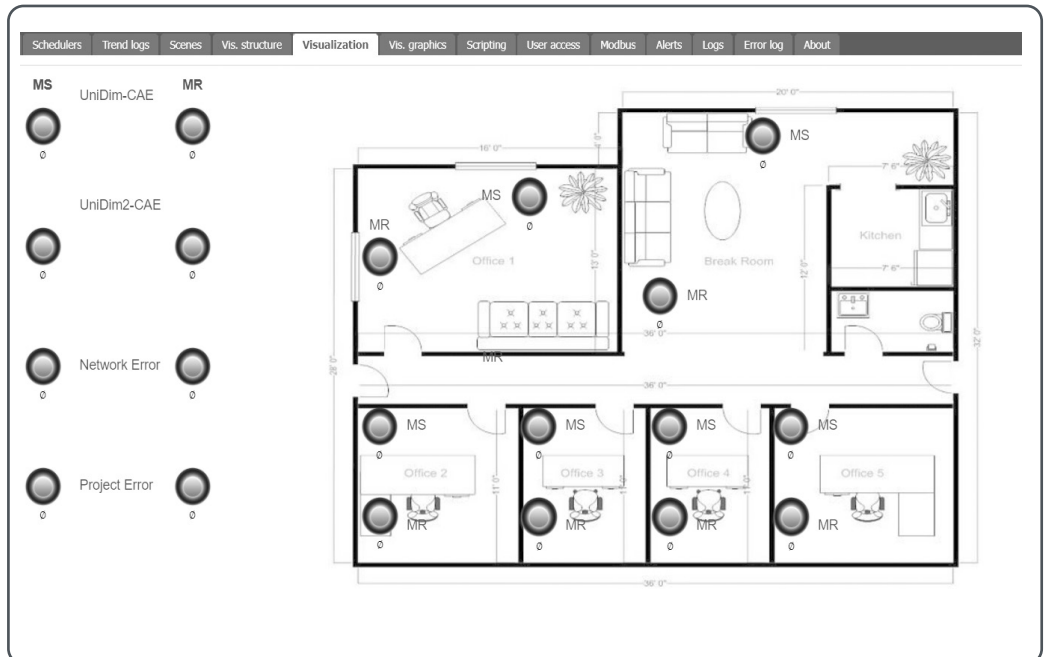
Enter text in the **Text** field.

Click the **Add to plan** button.

Click **Save and reload plan**.

Drag the text to the proper location and adjust the size using the **Font size** field.

The following visualization is how the page could appear, depending on your preferences.

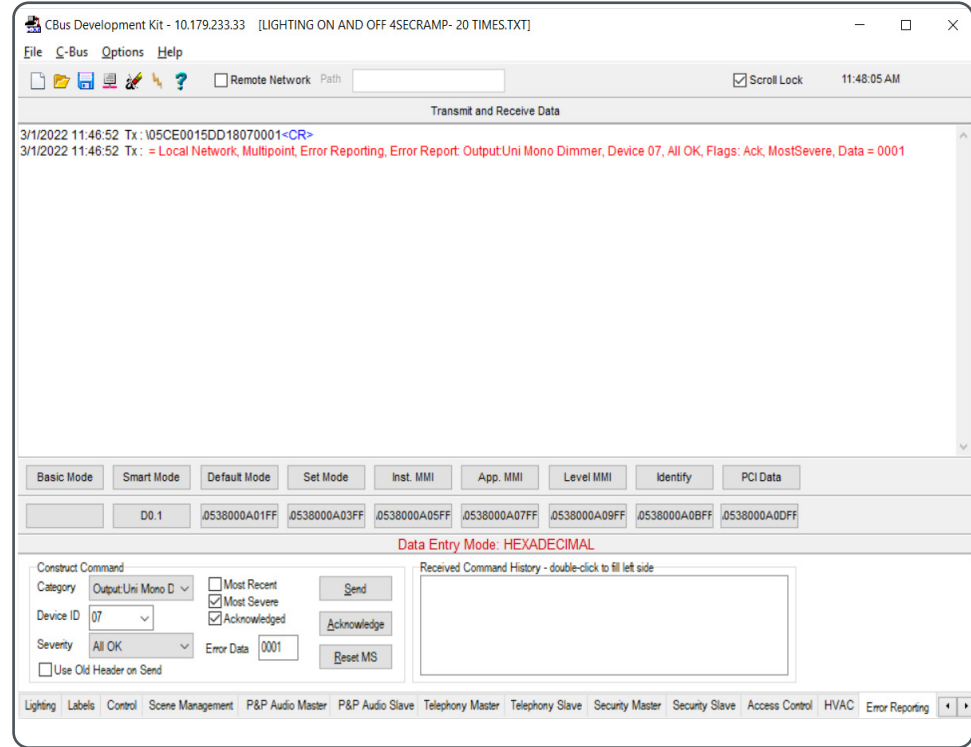


If continuing from the previous step, exit edit page/plan mode by clicking **Save and reload plan**.

If there is no connection to the physical devices, connect them to get values for the objects.



An alternative is to use the C-Bus Diagnostic Utility to send an error message for each of the physical objects. The next screenshot shows how to use the C-Bus Diagnostic Utility to send an error message for *Office/Error/UniDim/UD-CH0*.



The CBus Diagnostic Utility or a configured physical C-Bus universal dimmer/ key unit can now send an error report. When a report is received, the status icon changes and reports in the error page.

The C-Bus Diagnostic Utility sends these messages:

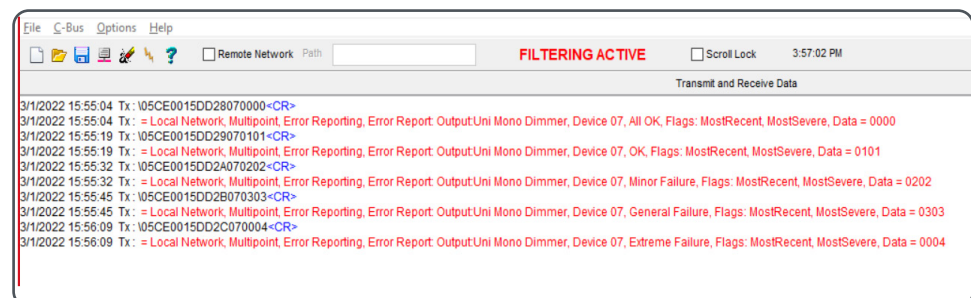
universal dimmer channel 0 with severity level 1 and error level 0 for most severe and most recent without ACK.

universal dimmer channel 1 with severity level 1 and error level 1 for most severe and most recent without ACK.

universal dimmer channel 2 with severity level 2 and error level 2 for most severe and most recent without ACK.

universal dimmer channel 3 with severity level 3 and error level 3 for most severe and most recent without ACK.

universal dimmer channel 0 with severity level 4 and error level 4 for most severe and most recent without ACK.



Error codes: The first two digits represent the channel and the last two digits represent the error value.



Example: *Data* = 0004 is channel 0, error value 4.

After changes, the error page displays as follows:

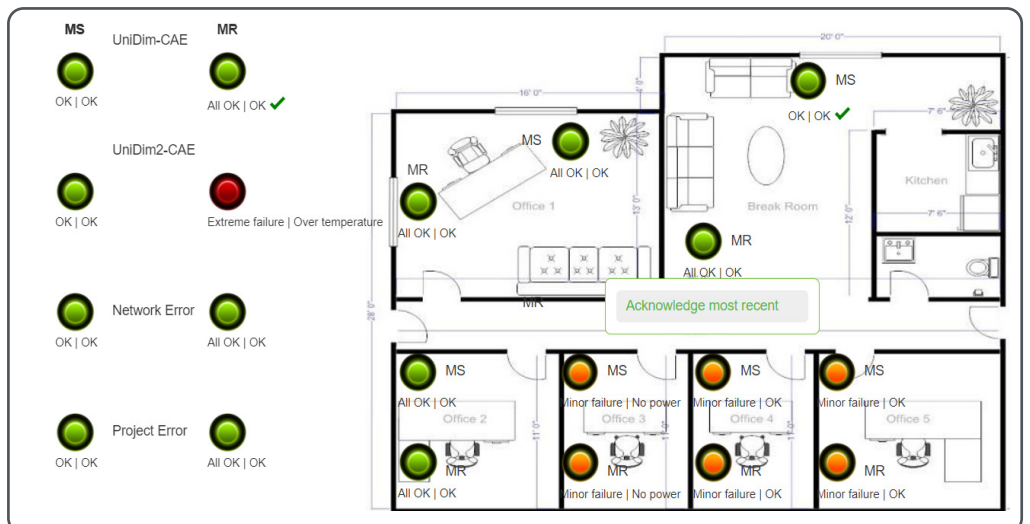


To send the acknowledgement for **Most severe** Error, click on the **Most severe** error icon and select the option *Acknowledge Most severe* from drop-down menu as shown below:

Similarly, To clear Error, Click on the **Most severe** error icon and select the option *Clear* from drop-down menu as shown below:

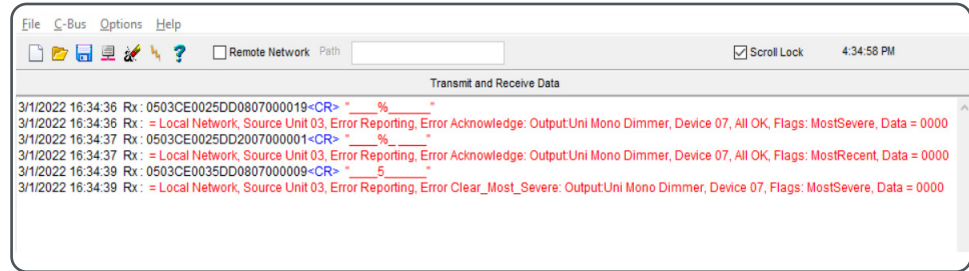


To send the acknowledgement for **Most Recent Error**, Click on the **Most Recent** error icon and select the option *Acknowledge Most Recent* from drop-down menu as shown below:



Note: Acknowledge and Clear support is available only for Channel errors.

Click the **Acknowledge Most Severe/Acknowledge Most Recent** and **Clear** button to get ACK and Clear messages sent by the C-Bus Diagnostic Utility.



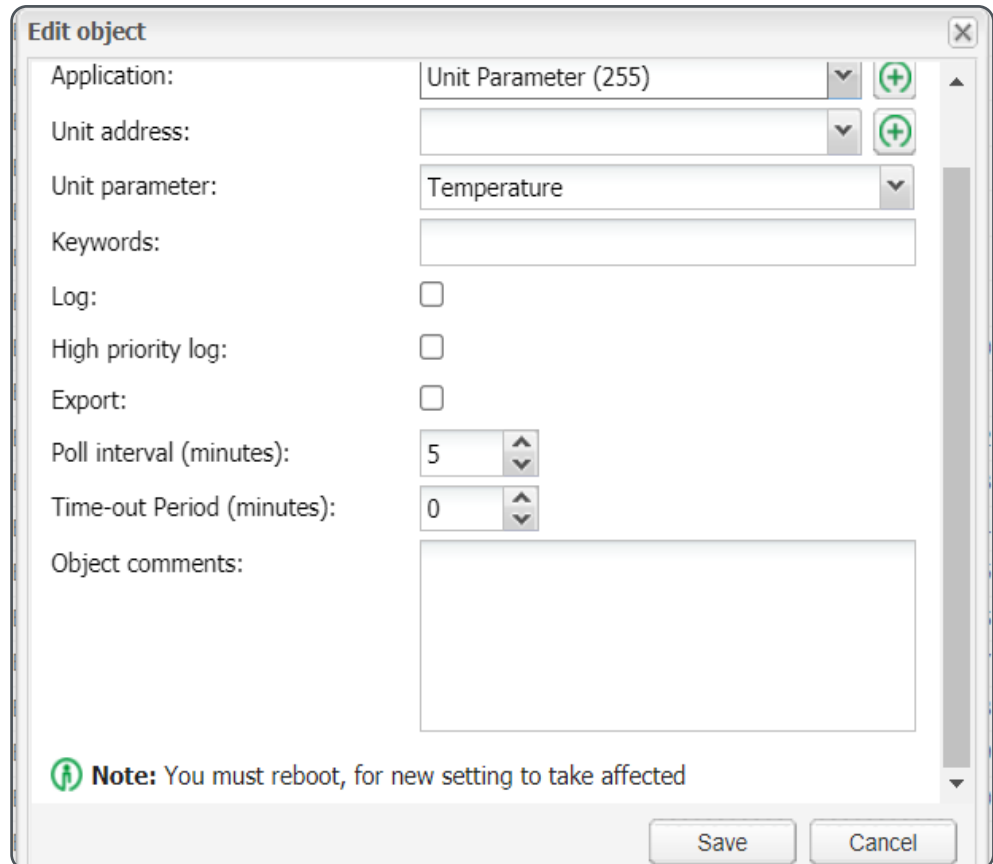
4.7.9 Add Unit parameters

The *Unit parameter* application is used to get pre-set information such as the C-Bus voltage. The Controller polls C-Bus units to get these values. The measured value is transferred with a 24 bit floating point number and the unit is coded with 8 bit.

Click on the **Add new object** button at the bottom of the **Objects** tab to open an *Edit object* window.

Select the unit parameter application

In the **Application** list, select: *255 - Unit Parameter*.



Add unit address

Click the **Unit address** Add button  to create a new *Unit address* (0–255).

Only select units that can deliver the requested value.

ID Select: 0–255.

Name Max 32 characters, except "/". The name is linked with the ID. Change the name in the [Tag map](#) tab.

Unit parameters

- Voltage (C-Bus voltage measured by a C-Bus device with a unit address)
- Light level
- Utilisation
- Temperature.

4.7.10 Additional parameters for all applications

The following parameters can be set for all applications when adding a new object or editing an existing one.

Table 28: Additional parameters for applications

Keywords	Keywords are assigned to the object. Keywords can be used in scripts. For example, the Keyword “Light” can be used for a central function and the keyword “LED” for some LED lights.
Log	Activates logging for this object. Logs appear in the Object logs tab. This parameter can also be selected in the <i>objects</i> list.
High priority log	This option shifts high priority logs towards the top of the list in the Object logs tab. If the defined limit of logs is exceeded, low priority logs at the end of the list are deleted first.
Export	The <i>Export</i> parameter makes the object visible to remote XML requests, for example to make the object available in BACnet. This parameter can also be selected in the <i>objects</i> list.
Object comment	Optional additional information.

4.8 Edit and test objects

Edit all objects in the [Objects](#) list.

Objects												
Object logs												
Tag map												
Schedulers												
Trend logs												
Scenes												
Vis. structure												
Visualization												
Vis. gra												
Name	Group a...	Ev...	Current...	L...	E...	Keywords	Updat...	Set value	Vis...	Levels	...	
Local/Lighting/Main ...	0/56/2		128	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Light_Main	14.01....					
Local/Enable/Enable	0/203/1		ON (25...	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable	14.01....					
Local/Measurement/...	0/228/5/3		25.5 °C	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Basement	14.01....					
Local/Scenes/Scene...	0/202/1		Night (3)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All_1_2	12.01....					

Click an object in the list to display the object properties. Edit the parameters *Keywords, Logs, High priority Log* and *Export*. See *Additional parameters for all applications* on page 107.

- Change the names (tags) linked to the composed addresses in the **Tag map** tab.
- The new composed addresses, which are visible in the *Group Address* column cannot be changed. If necessary, delete the object and then create a new one.

4.8.1 Preparation for visualization


Edit visualization parameters in the **Vis. Parameters** and via the **Levels** button in the **Objects** list.

Table 29: *Vis. Parameters and Levels*

Vis. Parameter	Click a slider icon under <i>Vis. Parameter</i> in the Objects list and then select a control type. For more information, see <i>Visualization parameters and control type</i> on page 159.
Levels	Link levels with names (e.g. 0 = Off and 255 = On). Use levels and names in the visualization (see <i>Overview of control types</i> on page 157). Edit levels and names in the Tag map tab.


4.8.2 Control values

Table 30: *Control values*

Set values	When C-Bus is connected, the information <i>C-Bus Online</i> appears at the bottom of the window. With this button open a window and select values for sending. In the case of a lighting application select a level and a ramp rate. If there is a prepared a temperature alarm, send the value that triggers the alarm. Set and save values. The new value is then visible in the Current value column. When the value is send, the background colour of row turns for same seconds to green and then to grey.
Current value	This column displays the last send or received value.
Auto update enabled	Object values will automatically be updated when changed. They will highlight green for a few seconds. With a click on the Auto update enabled button this function can be disabled.
Refresh button	Click the Refresh button  at the bottom of the list to manually refresh the list.
Bus sniffer	By default, the Bus sniffer function is enabled. When the sniffer function is disabled or C-Bus is offline, new objects will not be displayed. See <i>Sniffer function</i> on page 109.

4.8.3 Additional options for editing

Table 31: *Additional options for editing*

Delete	Click a delete button  in the list to delete the associated object.
Clear	Click the Clear button at the bottom of the list to delete all currently visible objects in the list. This is useful when used with the filter function. A warning is displayed when this button is clicked.
Mass delete	Click the Mass Delete button at the bottom of the list to delete objects from the current filter. A warning is displayed when this button is clicked.
Object filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name: Any part of the object name. • Address: The wild cards "*" and "," can be used, e.g. 0/2/* • Application: Select from a list. • Keywords: Separate multiple keywords with "," and select whether the filter will find matches for all keywords entered, or just one or more keywords. <p>The object filter is located on the left side of the list and can be opened and closed with a button.</p>

4.9 Sniffer function

When the sniffer function is enabled and C-Bus is online, new objects are automatically added to the **objects** list. Existing objects with the same composed address are not overwritten.

New objects are not automatically added to the **Tag map** list, they can be added manually and optionally change the names. See *Tag map* on page 111.

4.9.1 Communication with C-Bus

C-Bus must be physically connected via one of the C-Bus RJ45 connectors on the Controller. If C-Bus is online, the status is shown in the bottom bar of the **Configurator** page. See “3.8.3 C-Bus Status” on page 39.

Set and send values

The value appears in the **Current value** column of the **Objects** list (click on the **Objects** tab of the configurator page). When the value is saved, the background colour of the row turns green for a few seconds.

4.9.2 Discover new objects

By default, the sniffer function is disabled. Enable the sniffer function in the **General configuration** tab.

Path: **Utilities** tab → **General configuration** tab.

When a new object is discovered, a new row appears and the background colour of the row is green for a few seconds. The row background colour also turns green for a few seconds when a new value for an object is received.

4.10 Object logs

An object’s event history is displayed in **Object logs** tab. Logging must be enabled for the object, after which all events are logged.

Log time	Name	Object ad...	Decoded value	Object data (nu
06.04.20...	Local/Lighting/R...	0/56/1	0 - 0%	00000000
06.04.20...	Local/Lighting/R...	0/56/1	178 - 70%	B2B20000
06.04.20...	Local/Measurem...	0/228/25/2	24 °C	41C0000000
06.04.20...	Local/Lighting/R...	0/56/2	86 - 34%	56560000
06.04.20...	Local/Lighting/R...	0/56/1	255 - 100%	FFFF0000

4.10.1 Filter functions

Table 32: Filter functions

Start date	Enter date and time
End date	Enter date and time
Group address	Enter the group address of the object (e.g. 0/56/3)
Network	Select network from list (e.g. 0-local)
Application	Select application from list.
Keywords	Enter one or more keywords. Keywords must be separated with a comma (e.g. floor1,left).
Value	Enter a value (e.g. 255).



You can use wildcards in any of the filter functions.

4.10.2 Clear

Click the **Clear** button at the bottom of the **Object logs** tab to clear all logs.

4.10.3 Export all logs

Click the **Export all Logs** button to exports logs to a .CSV file.

4.10.4 High priority log

This option moves high priority logs closer to the top of the list. If the defined limit of logs is exceeded, low priority logs at the end of the list are deleted first.

4.10.5 Log size

By default, the log size is set to 200. The log size can be changed in the general configuration (path: **Utilities** tab → **General configuration** button).



Excessive object logging degrades the performance of the Controller.

5 Tag map

The **Tag map** tab provides a detailed view about all objects. Once new objects are imported or added, access them in the tag map. Use the tag map to change all names (tags) and add new applications, groups and levels. The tag map view is hierarchical, and can be expanded and collapsed in sections to focus on the required objects.

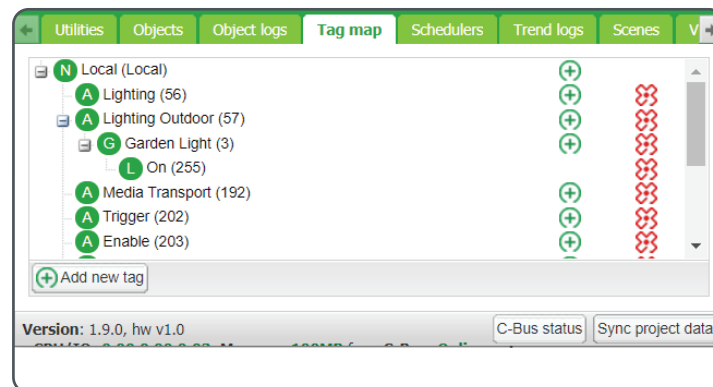
Path: **Configurator** → **Tag map** tab.

5.1 Structure

The tag map is a tree structure using the following hierarchy:

- Network
- Application
- Group > (Sub-group)
- Level.

5.1.1 Example of a tag map



- (N) Network (e.g. 0 - Ground floor)
- (A) Application (e.g. 56 - Lighting)
- (G) Group (e.g. 1 -Room 1)
- (L) Level (e.g. 255 - On)
- + Expand and show subordinate step
- Collapse and show superordinate step
- Add:
 - Network
 - Application
 - Group
 - Level
- Delete step and all subordinated steps

5.1.2 Edit tag names

On each level, the number and the name (tag) are shown. In the **Objects** list, the numbers of network, application and group are composed and separated with a slash.

e.g. 0/58/1 = Local/Lighting Upper Floor/Room 1.

What cannot be edited

In the case of a measurement application, editing is possible for the tag names of network, application and device ID (group address), but **not** the channel number.

e.g. 0/228/1/1 = Local/Measurement/Temperature/1.

5.1.3 Add new tags

Add new tags using the tag map, but it is recommended to add new applications and groups in the objects list or to import a CGL file from Toolkit. The new applications and groups are then displayed in the tag map.

An exception to this is for objects detected by the sniffer function. These objects appear in the **Objects** list but are not displayed in the tag map. In this case, use the tag map to add these applications and group addresses and optionally change the tag names.

Add application group level

Levels are used for the visualization (see *Overview of control types* on page 157).

Names can be defined for levels (e.g. 255 = On and 0 = Off). The levels defined in the tag map are also available in the **Objects** list.

Add a new tag via the **Add new tag** button or via an **Add** button in the **Tag map** list.

6 Emergency and exit lighting



Emergency and exit lighting features are only available in the 5500NAC2.

6.1 Overview of emergency and exit lighting

6.1.1 Emergency and exit lighting components

The following example shows a possible arrangement of emergency and exit lighting components in a three-storey building.

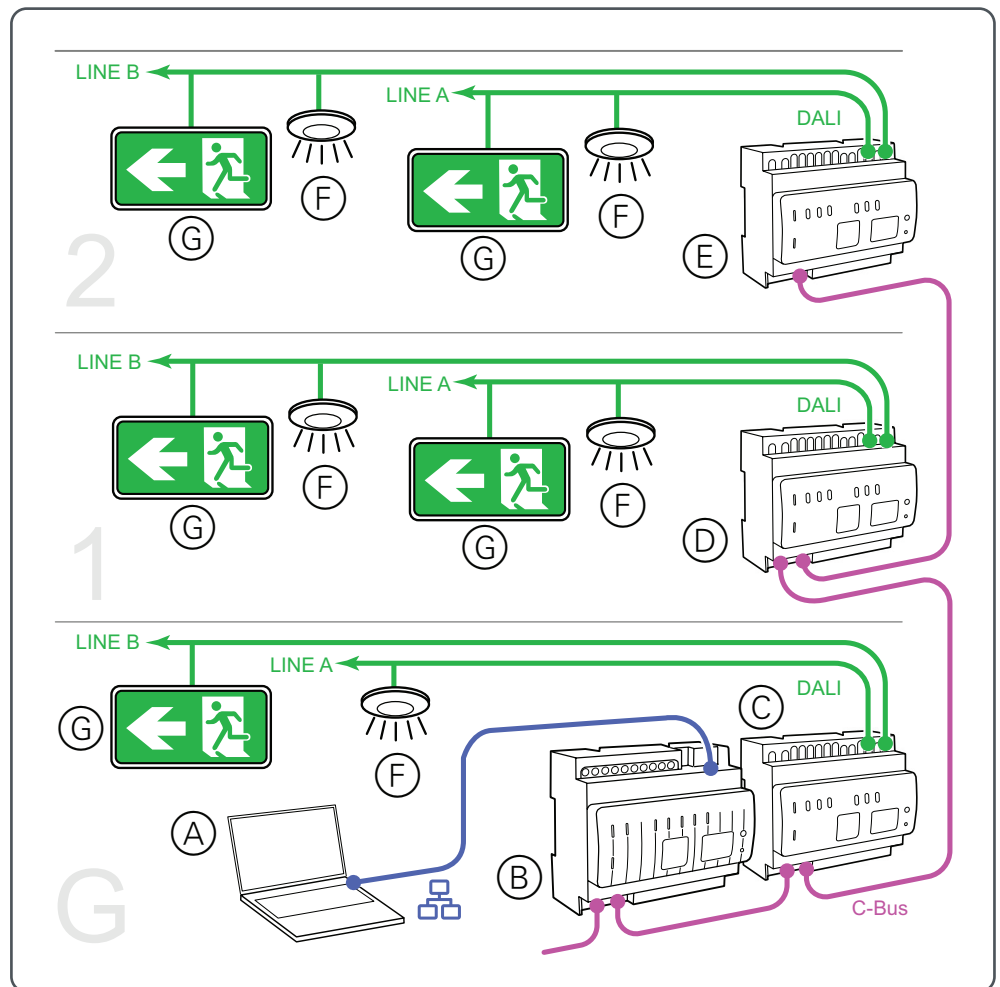


Table 33: Emergency and exit lighting components

(A)	Laptop/PC with browser to access Network Automation Controller web interface, and SpaceLogic C-Bus Commission software to create emergency and exit lighting objects and groups. Connect the computer to the Network Automation Controller by Ethernet or USB.
(B)	Network Automation Controller 5500NAC2.
(C)	DALI-2 gateway (ground floor emergency and exit lighting)
(D)	DALI-2 gateway (first floor emergency and exit lighting)
(E)	DALI-2 gateway (second floor emergency and exit lighting)
(F)	DALI ECGs
(G)	Emergency and exit lights

6.1.2 Typical emergency and exit lighting tasks

SpaceLogic C-Bus Commission software

- Create emergency and exit lighting objects and groups.
- Transfer emergency and exit lighting objects and groups to the Network Automation Controller.



Objects can also be created manually in the Network Automation Controller via the Configuration page.

Network Automation Controller interface (admin user)

Use the **Configurator** to:

- Assign emergency and exit lights to a group.
- Configure users to manage emergency and exit lighting tests and generate reports.
- Set the Site ID logo that is printed on reports.
- Set the period to store reports (reports older than the period will be overwritten).
- Create a scheduler to test emergency and exit lighting groups and assign the scheduler to an Emergency & Exit Lighting user.
- If required, create additional emergency and exit lighting objects and groups.

Network Automation Controller interface (Emergency & Exit Lighting user)

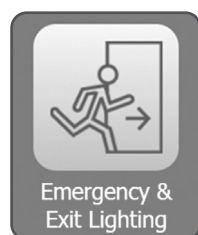
Use the **Emergency & Exit Lighting** module to:

- Perform ad-hoc tests on emergency and exit lights and groups.
- Modify the event for a scheduler that has been created and assigned to the user.
- Review and print test results for recording and compliance purposes.
- Email test results to others when required.

Use the **Scheduler** module to manage automatic emergency and exit lighting tests.

6.2 Accessing the emergency and exit lighting module

Click the **Emergency & Exit Lighting** button on the main menu.



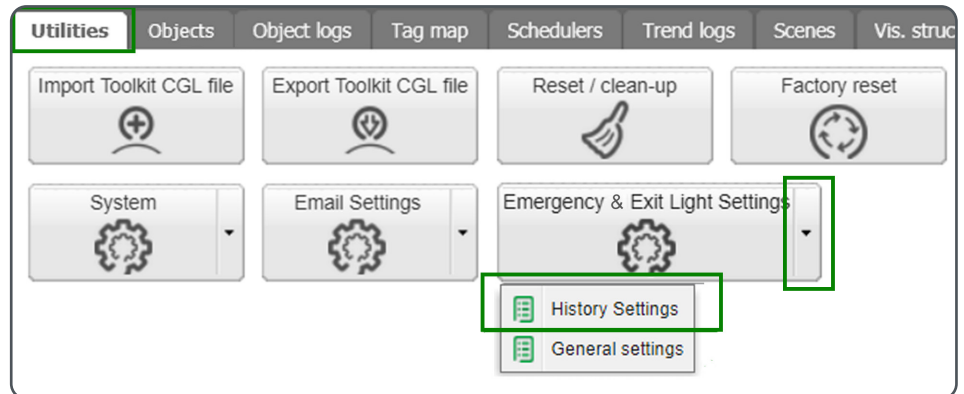
The **Emergency & Exit Lighting** module is used for routine activities such as ad-hoc emergency and exit lighting tests. Initial set up and configuration tasks are performed using the **Configurator**.

6.3 Configuring emergency and exit lighting

6.3.1 General emergency and exit lighting settings

History settings

- ① Connect to the Network Automation Controller interface and open the **Configurator**.
- ② Select the **Utilities** tab.
- ③ Click the drop down arrow to the right of the **Emergency & Exit Light Settings** button, then select **History Settings**.



- ④ Set the time period that emergency and exit lighting reports should be retained for.



General settings

- ① Click the drop down arrow to the right of the **Emergency & Exit Light Settings** button, then select **General settings** and make the settings as described in *General settings dialog* on page 116.

General settings dialog

Table 34: General settings dialog elements

A	Site ID	The Site ID is displayed on all emergency and exit lighting test reports.
B	Admin Logo	Each user can have a unique logo that is printed at the top of group and individual test reports when the user runs an emergency and exit lighting test. Some emergency and exit lighting tests, however, are run by the admin account rather than a user, and so a logo can be set in the Admin Logo field to print on those test reports.
C	Time Interval (milli-seconds)	The desired maximum time interval between when a command (for example, an <i>Inhibit</i> command) is sent from the Network Automation Controller and when it is processed by the DALI Gateway. The default value is 2000 ms. Note: The minimum recommended value is 1000 ms. IMPORTANT: Restart the Network Automation Controller after changing this setting.

6.3.2 Creating objects and groups

Using SpaceLogic C-Bus Commission software

Refer to the SpaceLogic C-Bus Commission software user manual for information on creating emergency and exit lighting objects and groups.

Using the Network Automation Controller interface

See *Add new objects* on page 47 and *Emergency and exit lighting application* on page 49.

6.3.3 Transferring objects and groups to the Network Automation Controller

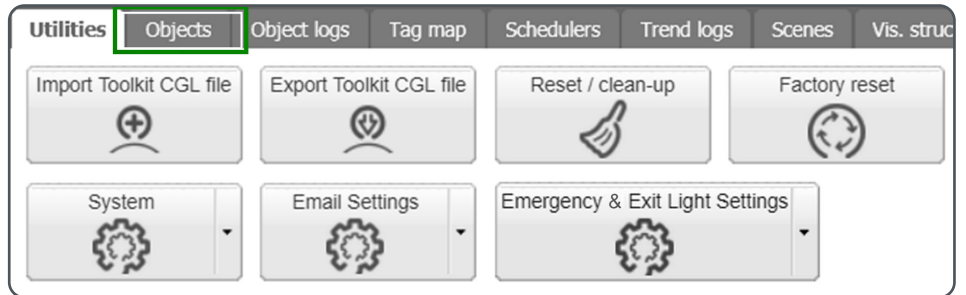
Refer to the SpaceLogic C-Bus Commission software user manual for information on transferring emergency and exit lighting objects and groups to the Network Automation Controller.

6.3.4 Assigning emergency and exit lights to a group

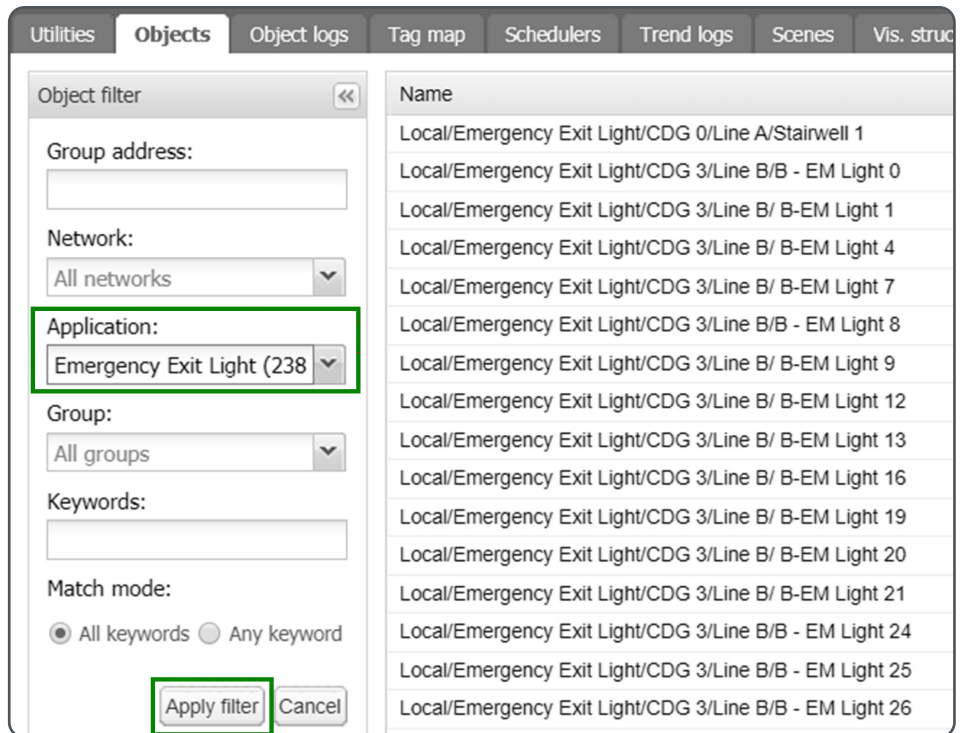


Consider assigning emergency and exit lights with odd-numbered addresses to one group and lights with even-numbered addresses to another group. Testing can then be performed on one group at a different time to the other group, ensuring that half of the lights in a given location operate normally in the event of an emergency.

- ① Connect to the Network Automation Controller interface and open the **Configurator**.
- ② Click the **Objects** tab.

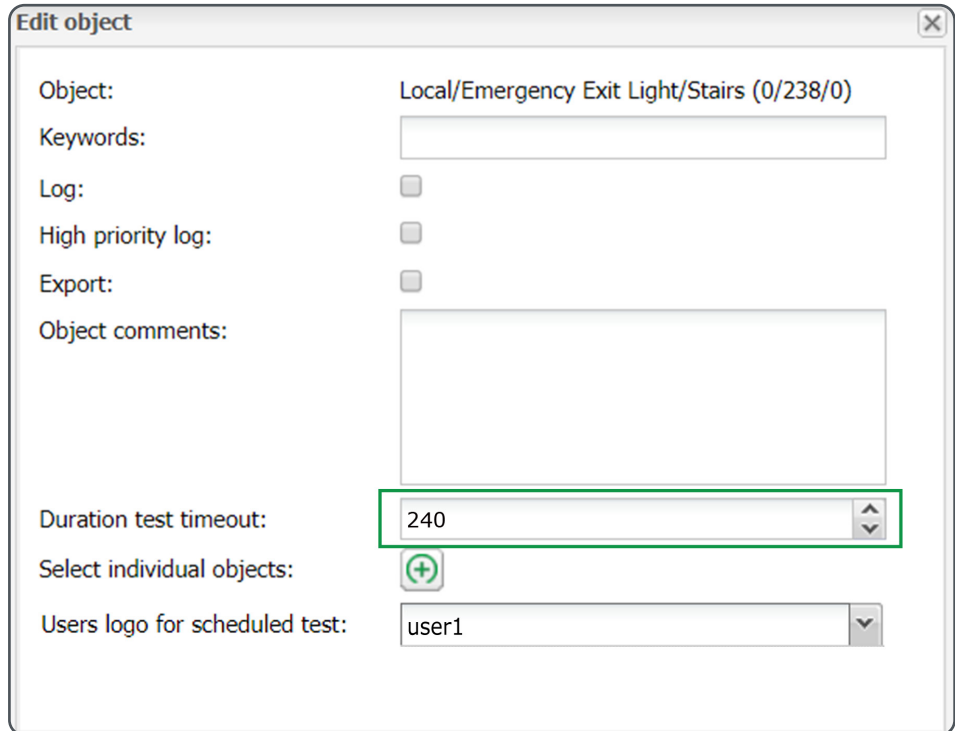


- ③ In the **Object Filter**, select the application **Emergency & exit lighting (238)** and then click **Apply Filter**.



- ④ In the object list, click the group that you want to add emergency and exit lighting objects to.

- ⑤ In the **Edit Object** dialog, select the **Duration test timeout**.



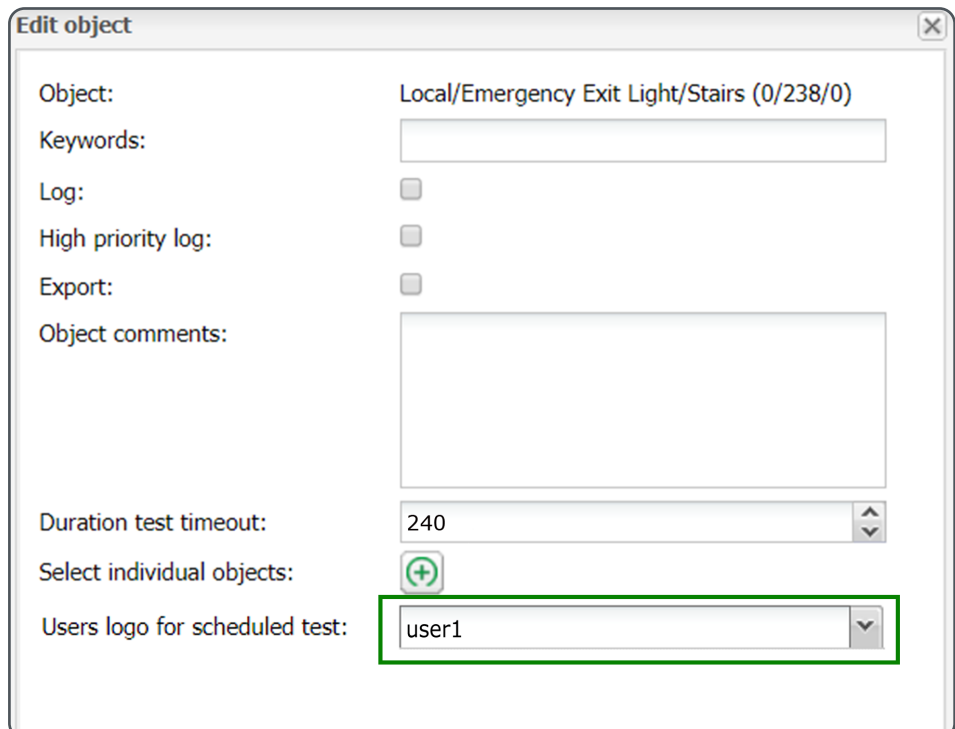
The screenshot shows the 'Edit object' dialog box with the following fields and controls:

- Object: Local/Emergency Exit Light/Stairs (0/238/0)
- Keywords: [Empty text box]
- Log:
- High priority log:
- Export:
- Object comments: [Empty text area]
- Duration test timeout: 240 (highlighted with a green box)
- Select individual objects:
- Users logo for scheduled test: user1



The **Duration test timeout** is the maximum time for the duration test.

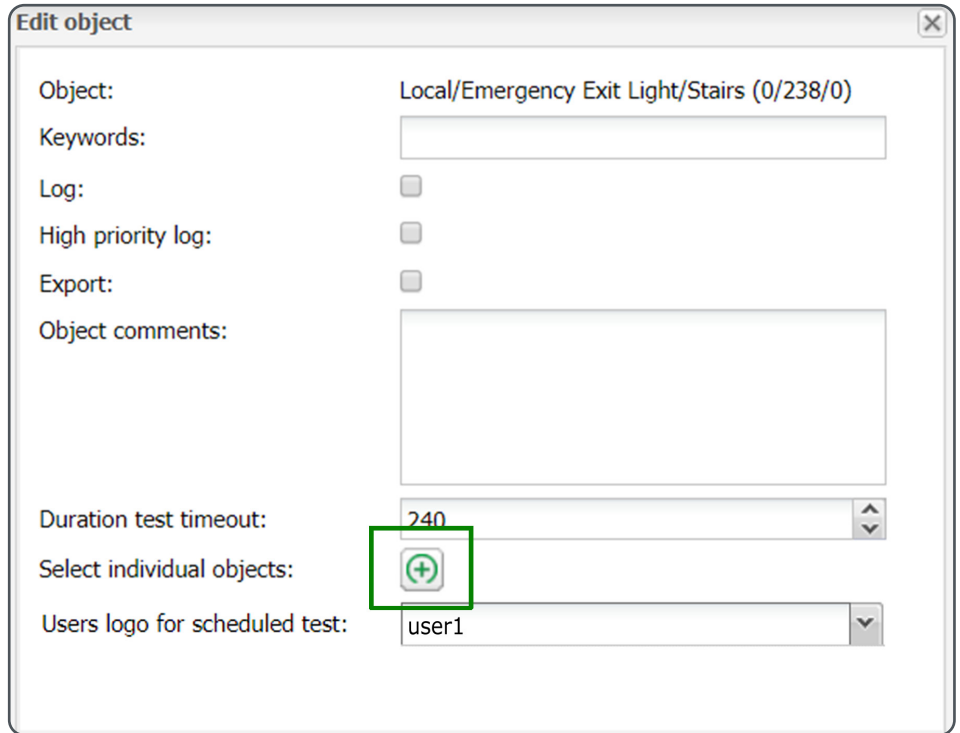
- ⑥ Set a user's logo to print at the top of scheduled group test reports.



The screenshot shows the 'Edit object' dialog box with the following fields and controls:

- Object: Local/Emergency Exit Light/Stairs (0/238/0)
- Keywords: [Empty text box]
- Log:
- High priority log:
- Export:
- Object comments: [Empty text area]
- Duration test timeout: 240
- Select individual objects:
- Users logo for scheduled test: user1 (highlighted with a green box)

- ⑦ Click the **Select individual objects** button.



Edit object

Object: Local/Emergency Exit Light/Stairs (0/238/0)

Keywords:

Log:

High priority log:

Export:

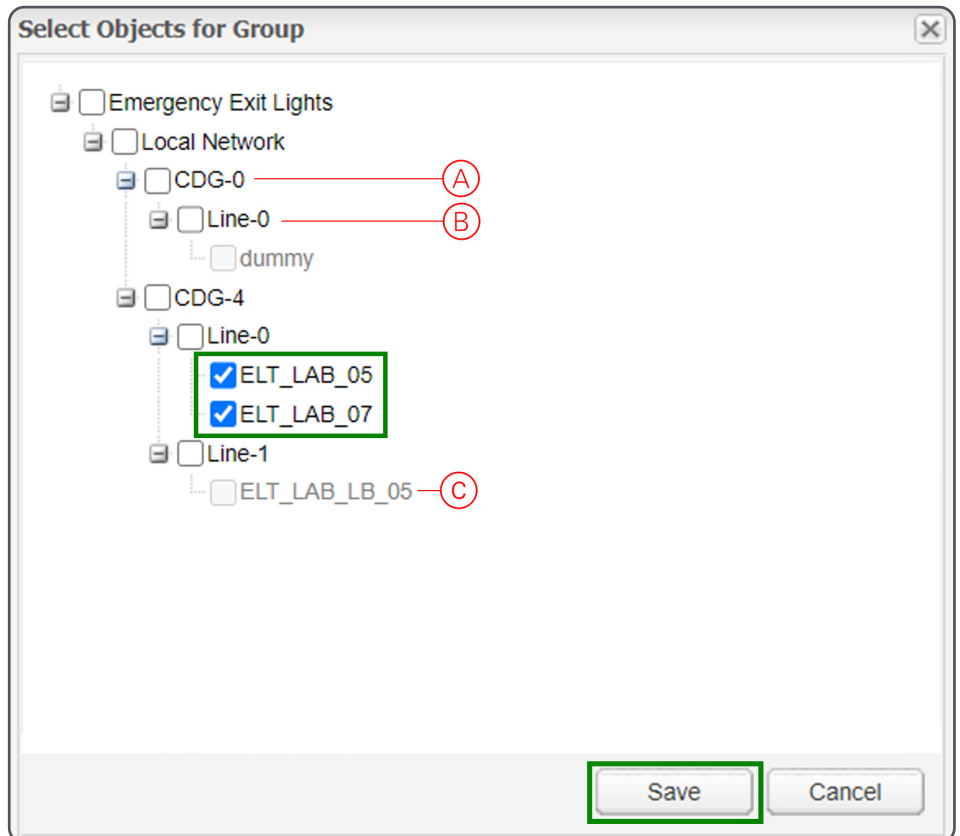
Object comments:

Duration test timeout: 240

Select individual objects:

Users logo for scheduled test: user1

- ⑧ Select the object(s) to add to the group, then click **Save**.



Select Objects for Group

- Emergency Exit Lights
 - Local Network
 - CDG-0 (A)
 - Line-0 (B)
 - ELT_LAB_05
 - ELT_LAB_07
 - dummy
 - CDG-4
 - Line-0
 - Line-1
 - ELT_LAB_LB_05 (C)

Save Cancel



In the screenshot above, (A) is the DALI-2 gateway, (B) is the DALI line (0=Line A, 1=Line B) and grayed objects (C) are not selectable as they are already assigned to a group.

- ⑨ In the **Edit Object** dialog, click **Save** to commit the changes.

6.3.5 Setting up emergency and exit lighting users

Give access to people who will perform emergency and exit lighting tests and manage test reports.

See *User access* on page 183 for information on adding users and assigning access levels.

When adding a user for emergency and exit lighting:

- ① On the **General** tab, select **Partial Access** next to **Emergency Light access**.
- ② On the **Emergency Light** tab, select the emergency and exit lighting groups that the user should have access to.



An emergency and exit lighting group can be assigned to multiple users.

- ③ Once the user is created, click the **Additional Data** button on the user row to set a logo that will appear at the top of test reports generated by emergency and exit lighting tests run by the user.

6.3.6 Setting up automatic testing for emergency and exit lighting groups

Create a scheduler and events to automatically run tests on a group of emergency and exit lights at regular intervals. Assign a user to monitor and manage the scheduler.

Add a scheduler

To add a new scheduler, see *Add a scheduler* on page 129.

When adding the scheduler:

- For **Object**, select an emergency and exit lighting group.
- For **Name**, use a plain language name representing the emergency light group.

Add an event

To add an event, see *Add an event* on page 130.

When adding the event:

- Choose a time interval to meet the regulatory requirement of the type of test to be triggered (e.g. a specific date each month; every third Tuesday).
- In the **Value** field, select either **Function Test** or **Duration Test**.

Assign a user to the scheduler

Add or edit a user to access and manage the new scheduler.

To add or edit a user, see *Add and edit user* on page 184.

When adding or editing the user:

- On the **General** tab of the **User** editing dialog, select **Partial Access** in the **Schedulers access** field.
- On the **Schedulers** tab of the editing dialog, tick the scheduler name in the list.

The user can now access and manage the emergency and exit lighting scheduler by logging in to the **Scheduler** module. See *Managing an emergency and exit lighting scheduler* on page 126.

Note:

- The scheduled test report will be mailed to users only (not admin).
- The users must be privileged to be part of the test group.

6.4 Routine emergency and exit lighting activities

Perform an ad-hoc test on a group of emergency and exit lights or an individual light. View (and print or e-mail, if required) a test report for a group of emergency and exit lights or an individual light.

The testing functions are contained in the **Emergency & Exit Lighting** module. The Emergency & Exit Lighting module interface is shown in the next figure.

Name	Set Mode ^(C)	^(D) Set	Current Mode	Test Status ^(G)	Report
ELTS_LINE_A ^(A)	Normal (Stop Test)	Set	Function Test	In Progress	Report
ELT_LAB_05 ^(B)	Duration Test	Set	Duration Test ^(E)	In Progress (0%) ^(F)	Report
ELT_LAB_07 ^(B)	Function Test	Set	Function Test	In Progress	Report
ELTS_LINE_B ^(A)	Normal (Stop Test)	Set	Normal	Fail	Report
dummy ^(B)	Normal (Stop Test)	Set	Normal	Communication Loss	Report
ELT_LAB_LB_05 ^(B)	Normal (Stop Test)	Set	Normal	Pass	Report

Table 35: Emergency and exit lighting interface elements

^(A)	Emergency and exit lighting group. Note: Only those groups assigned to the user are displayed.
^(B)	Individual emergency exit light.
^(C)	Set Mode: Select the action/test to activate. Available actions/tests include: Function test , Duration test , Inhibit , Rest and Relight/Reset Inhibit . Set Inhibit mode to stop the lamp going to emergency mode in the event of mains failure. Set Rest mode to save battery when the building is unoccupied. Set Relight/Reset Inhibit to put the control gear back into emergency mode when mains is not present.
^(D)	Set buttons: Click the button to activate the mode selected in ^(C) .
^(E)	Current Mode: Normal = standard state; otherwise, the current action underway is displayed (e.g. 'Duration Test').
^(F)	Test Status: In Progress (% completed) = test underway; otherwise, the result of the last test is displayed. Note: <i>Communication Loss</i> indicates that either the ECG or the DALI gateway was not detected. Refer to the troubleshooting section in the DALI gateway user manual.
^(G)	Report buttons: Click the button to access test reports that have been generated for the group or individual light.

6.4.1 Performing emergency and exit lighting tests

Function test

A function test checks that the battery and lamp in an individual emergency exit light are operating normally.

In the **Emergency & Exit Lighting** module:

- Choose a group or individual light and select **Function Test** in the **Set Mode** column.
- Click the corresponding **Set** button to start the test.

The test will take about 2 minutes to complete. While the test is underway, **Function Test** is displayed in the **Current Mode** column, and **In Progress** is displayed in the **Test Status** column.

Once the test is complete, **Pass** or **Fail** is displayed in the **Test Status** column. A test report is also generated. See *Emergency and exit lighting test reporting* on page 122.

Duration test

A duration test checks that an emergency and exit lighting battery can maintain the lamp in an On state without mains power for the rated duration of the device.

In the **Emergency & Exit Lighting** module:

- ① Choose a group or individual light and select **Duration Test** in the **Set Mode** column.
- ② Click the corresponding **Set** button to start the test.

The test can take one or more hours to complete, depending on the rated duration of the emergency light(s). While the test is underway, **Duration Test** is displayed in the **Current Mode** column, and **In Progress (% completed)** is displayed in the **Test Status** column.

Once the test is complete, **Pass** or **Fail** is displayed in the **Test Status** column. A test report is also generated. See *Emergency and exit lighting test reporting* on page 122.

Stopping a test in progress

While an emergency and exit lighting test is underway:

- ① Select **Normal (Stop Test)** in the **Set Mode** column.
- ② Click the **Set** button.

The test is stopped and **Stopped** is displayed briefly in the **Test Status** column.

6.4.2 Emergency and exit lighting test reporting

Accessing test reports

In the **Emergency & Exit Lighting** module, click the **Report** button corresponding to a group or individual light.

Group test reports


Click the group **Report** button to display the group test report panel. A history of test reports is maintained for each Emergency Lighting group, with the most recent report at the top of the list. The test report panel is shown in the next figure.

Select a date range (A)	Filter
Group report(s) for LEVEL_3_LINE_A	
Group_03092020174400 (B)	Email (C)
Group_03092020173852 (B)	Email (C)
Group_03092020173027 (B)	Email (C)

Table 36: Group test report panel elements

- | | |
|---|--|
| ① | Date range filter: Click the text box to display calendar widgets for setting the start and end dates, then click the Filter button to apply the date range. |
| ② | Group test report history list: Click a report name in the list to display the report details in a new browser tab (see <i>Group test report example</i> on page 123).
Note: Group report names are formatted as Group_ followed by a date/time stamp in the form ddmmyyhhmmss . |
| ③ | Email button: Click the button to manually email the report. (See <i>Emailing test reports</i> on page 125.) |

Group test report example

 A
Print B

Emergency and Exit Lighting - Group Test Report

Conducted On : 09/03/2026 11:12:29
 Site Id : SE-india
 Group Name : work
 Total Emergency Light Included : 1
 Total Emergency Light on normal operation : 1
 Total Emergency Light with fault detected : 0
 Overall Status : Pass

Lamp Name	Test Type	Start Time	Finish Time	Running Time	Rated Duration (min)	Emergency lamp failure	Battery failure	Circuit failure	Battery Duration Failure	LSL/Max LSL (Days)	Status	Comment
home	Function	09/03/2026 11:11:28	09/03/2026 11:12:29	00:01:01	90	No	No	No	No	NA	Pass	

Comment E

Maintenance Inspector (Full Name and Signature) F

Table 37: Group test report elements

A	Company logo	The source logo file is assigned when creating an emergency and exit lighting user. See <i>Setting up emergency and exit lighting users</i> on page 120.
B	Print button	Click the button to print the report.
C	Report summary details	An overview of the group test, including site ID, time the test was started, number of emergency lights tested, number of faults detected and overall status (Pass/Fail).
D	Test results for each light in group	(See column descriptions below)
	Lamp Name	The DALI Device ID of the individual emergency light in the group.
	Test Type	Function or Duration
	Start/Finish Time	The times that the test started and finished.
	Running Time	How long the test took to run.
	Rated Duration (min)	The specified minimum time that the emergency light must operate for when mains power is Off.
	Emergency lamp failure	Yes or No . If Yes , the emergency light is not working or faulty.
	Battery failure	Yes or No . If Yes , the emergency light battery is not working or faulty.
	Circuit failure	Yes or No . If Yes , the inverter in the emergency light has failed.
	Battery Duration Failure	Yes or No . If Yes , the emergency light battery is unable to perform the duration test within the maximum <i>Duration test time out</i> .
	LSL/Max LSL (Days)*	<i>Light Source Life</i> in days, displayed as LSL/Max LSL (Example: 10/1666)
	*Applies to Maintained and Switched Maintained lamp types only	LSL is the time in days since the lamp was commissioned (Example: 10 days). Max LSL is the maximum time in days since commissioning, after which the lamp must be replaced (Example: 1666 days). Note: This field is displayed in red if there are less than 365 days between LSL and Max LSL. For Non-Maintained and other lamp types, NA is reported in this field.
	Status	Pass, Fail or Comm Loss Comm Loss (<i>Communication Loss</i>) is reported under any of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The C-Bus DALI gateway is Off The emergency light is disconnected from the C-Bus DALI gateway A dummy load is present. Note: Where Comm Loss is reported for one or more emergency lights in the test group, the overall status for the test is Fail . (see C)

	Comment	An area to hand-write a comment about the emergency light test result on the printed report.
(E)	Comment field	An area to hand-write a comment about the overall group test on the printed report.
(F)	Signature field	An area for the Maintenance Inspector to sign the printed report.



The most recent group test report is updated whenever an individual test is performed on an emergency light in the group.

Individual test reports

Click the **Report** button for an emergency light to display the individual test report panel. A history of test reports is retained for individual lights, with the most recent report at the top of the list. The test report panel is shown in the next figure.

Report(s) for ELT_LAB_05 (B)

FT_03092020174400	Email
DT_03092020173852	Email
FT_03092020173027	Email

Table 38: Individual test report panel elements

- | | |
|-----|--|
| (A) | Individual test report history list: Click a report name in the list to display the report details in a new browser tab (see <i>Individual test report example</i> below).
Note: Individual report names are formatted as FT_ (Function Test) or DT_ (Duration Test) followed by a date/time stamp in the form ddmmyyyyhhmmss . |
| (B) | Email button: Click the button to manually email the report. (See <i>Emailing test reports</i> on page 125.) |

Individual test report example

(B)

Emergency and Exit Lighting - Test Report

Conducted on	09/03/2026 11:12:29
Test Performer Name	prakash
Site Id	SE-india
Summary Result	Pass

Results for the latest test

Lamp Name	home
Test Type	Function Test
Test Start Time	09/03/2026 11:11:28
Test Finish Time	09/03/2026 11:12:29
Test Running Time	00:01:01
Rated Duration (min)	90
Emergency lamp failure	No
Battery failure	No
Circuit failure	No
Battery Duration Failure	No
LSL/Max LSL (Days)	NA

Comment (E)	
Maintenance Inspector (Full Name and Signature) (F)	

Table 39: Individual test report elements

(A)	Company logo	The source logo file is assigned when creating an emergency and exit lighting user. See <i>Setting up emergency and exit lighting users</i> on page 120.
(B)	Print button	Click the button to print the report.
(C)	Report summary details	An overview of the individual test, including time the test was started, who initiated the test and the test result.
(D)	Test results for the latest test	These fields are the same as those used in the group test report. See <i>Group test report example</i> on page 123.
(E)	Comment field	An area to hand-write a comment on the printed report.
(F)	Signature field	An area for the Maintenance Inspector to sign the printed report.

Emailing test reports

Automatic emailing

Whenever an emergency lighting test is completed, an email containing the test report is automatically sent to each user who has been given access to the Emergency Lighting group.



An email account and SMTP details must be configured for automatic emailing. In the **Utilities** tab of the **Configurator** page, click the **Email Settings** button and input the account details.

SMTP Settings

SMTP Server Address: server.country.domain_name.com

Security Mode: none

Port: 25

Account Login: name@domain_name.com

Account password:

Save Cancel

Manual emailing

Send a test report via email at any time by clicking the **Email** button next to a group or individual test report name in the test report panel. An email panel is displayed (see next figure).

Send Email Back

To

CC

Attachment
 FT_20210607162632.html

Subject
 g Report - Function Test , 07/06/2021


Message

Send Cancel

6.4.3 Managing an emergency and exit lighting scheduler

Users who have been given access to an emergency and exit lighting scheduler can manage the scheduler by logging in to the **Scheduler** module. See *Access to the Scheduler* on page 128.

The **Scheduler** module interface is shown in the next figure.

 Emergency and lighting schedulers are grouped separately from regular lighting schedulers to make them easier to locate. See (A) in the figure below.

The screenshot shows the 'Test Scheduler_ELT' interface. On the left is a sidebar with 'Lighting Schedulers' and 'Emergency and Exit Lighting Schedulers'. The main area shows a table of events with columns for Name, Run at, and Value. Action buttons like Edit, Add event, and Delete are visible. Callouts A-F highlight specific UI elements.

Name	Run at	Value
Run Funtion test _Lunch	15:42	Function Test

Table 40: Scheduler module interface elements for emergency and exit lighting

(A) Emergency and exit lighting groups.

Note: Only those groups assigned to the user are displayed and selectable.

-
- ⓑ Scheduler **Edit** button: Allows the user to edit the scheduler settings.

 - ⓒ **Add Event** button: Allows the user to add new events to the scheduler. For example, add a Function test for the lighting group.

 - ⓓ Event **Edit** button: Allows the user to edit the event settings. For example, change the frequency of testing, change the test type or set to not run on holidays.

 - ⓔ Event **Delete** button: Allows the user to delete the event.

 - ⓕ **Holidays** button: Allows the user to set holidays (affects holiday-related event settings)
-

7 Schedulers

The **Scheduler** provides control of different building functions using date and time. Typical functions include lighting, shutter control, heating and cooling control, and scene control for multiple functions. Use the application *250 - User Parameter*, to trigger an event-based script.

Use the **Configurator** to add objects and edit their schedule times.



A user can edit scheduled times but cannot add new objects.

7.1 Access to the Scheduler

A user can access the scheduler from either the main menu or the visualization view.

From the main menu

Click the **Scheduler** button on the main menu.



From the visualization view

Choose path: **Configurator** → **Scheduler** tab.

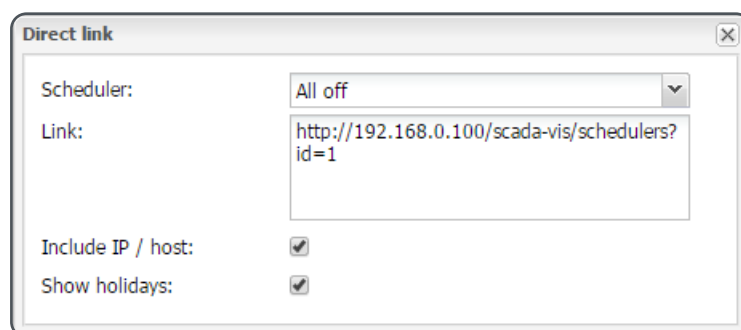
- To open the main **Scheduler** page from the **Configurator**, configure the **Schedulers** link in the plan editor of the visualization. See *Links* on page 163.
- To display the **Scheduler** as a frame within the visualization, configure a **Frame** in the plan editor of the visualization. See *Frame* on page 166.



Schedulers are not supported on the **Smartphone Visualization** page.

7.1.1 Link to a specific scheduler

- ① In the **Configurator** > **Schedulers** tab (see page 129), click the **Direct link** button to display the **Direct link** window.



- ② In the **Direct link** window, choose a **Scheduler**. The link to the scheduler is displayed in the **Link** field.



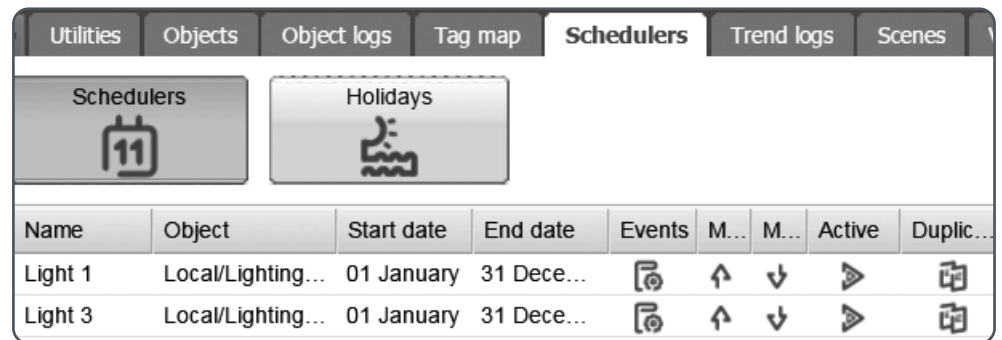
To link a scheduler in the visualization of another Controller, complete IP address. Tick *Include IP / host* to display the complete IP address in the **Link** field.

- ③ Copy the scheduler link displayed in the **Link** field.
- ④ Open the configurator **Visualization** tab. See *Links* on page 163.
- ⑤ Configure a **Link** in the **Plan Editor**, using the following settings:

Link to: Select "External link"
External Link: Paste the link copied from the Link field (see step ③)
 e.g. /scada-vis/schedulers?id=1

7.2 Schedulers and events

Configure all scheduling functions using the configurator **Schedulers** tab. Each scheduler must be linked with an object.



7.2.1 Add a scheduler

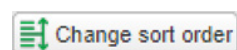
Path: **Configurator** → **Schedulers** tab → **Schedulers** button → **Add Scheduler** button.

Table 41: Scheduler settings

Object	Select an object to control.
Active	Set the scheduler to the active or inactive status. Can also be edited in a visualization—see ⑥ on page 132.
Scheduler enable by	Optional. Default value unused. Select Enable Group to control the scheduler. Note: If a valid Enable Group is chosen and its value is 0, the scheduler will be inactive.
Ignore enable group	Optional. Select the checkbox to ignore the selected Enable Group. When selected, the Scheduler will not take into account the status of the chosen Enable Group. This can also be edited from a visualization—see ⑦ on page 132
Name	Select a name. Can also be edited in a visualization—see ④ ⑤ on page 132.
Category	Categorise schedulers for better clarity and sort with drag and drop.
Start/End date	Defines the Start and End Date of a Schedule. The default dates are: January 1 to December 31. Can also be edited from a visualization—see ⑧ on page 132.



Click the **Change Sort Order** button to open a dialog and reorder the schedulers using drag and drop.



7.2.2 Add an event

Add events in a visualization or in the configurator.

- In a **visualization**, click the **Add event** button—see ① on page 129.
- In the **configurator**, click the **Add event** button in the **Events** list of the specific scheduler.

Path: **Scheduler** tab → **Schedulers** button → **Scheduler** List → **Events** icon.

Table 42: Event settings

Active	Set the event to the active or inactive status
Name	Select a name
Event disable level	Optional. Default value <i>unused</i> . Select the level to control the event. The event will not run if this selected level matches the current level of the selected Enable Group for the Scheduler.
Run at	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sunrise • Sunset <p>Sunrise and Sunset times are dependent on the time zone or the specific longitude and latitude of the location. See <i>Set Date and time</i> on page 34.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specific time
Start time offset (Sunrise or Sunset)	Select a time offset: -11 h 59 min to +11 h 59 min
Start time (Specific time)	Time when the event is triggered (switching time)
Day of the week (Specific time)	None ... All (Mo, Tu, ... Su) e.g. Tu-We, Fr Default: All
Weekday in month (Specific time)	None to All (1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, last) e.g. 1st, 3rd Default: All
Days of the month (Specific time)	None ... All (1, 2, ... 31) e.g. 1, 14, Default: All
Months (Specific time)	None ... All (Jan, Feb, ... Dec) e.g. Jan-Mar
Year	No entry, Year e.g. 2017 = only in 2017 Default: No entry = recurring every year
Holidays	Holiday periods can be defined and can be applied for all schedulers. For each event select one of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No effect • Do not run on holidays • Run only on holidays Default: No effect
Value	Select values specific to the application of the object e.g. Lighting: <i>Target level</i> and <i>Ramp rate</i>

When all settings are selected, click the **Save** button.

Example with day of week

To schedule for every Friday to switch the light off at 10 pm, apply the following settings:

Start time	22:00
Day of the week	Fr
Weekday in month	All
Days of the month	All
Months	All
Year	
Holidays	No effect
Value	Target level: 0 Ramp rate: 0 s

7.2.3 Add holidays

Holiday periods can be defined and applied to any scheduler. Holidays can be applied differently to each event:

- Event is not affected.
- Event does not run on holidays.
- Event runs only on holidays.

Add holidays in the visualization view or in the configurator.

- In the **visualization**, click **Holidays** and then the **Add holiday** button.
- In the **configurator**, click the **Add holiday** button in the **Holidays** list.

Path: **Schedulers** tab → **Holidays** button → **Holidays** List → **Events** icon.

Settings for day of week (visualization view)

Table 43: Holiday settings (day of week)

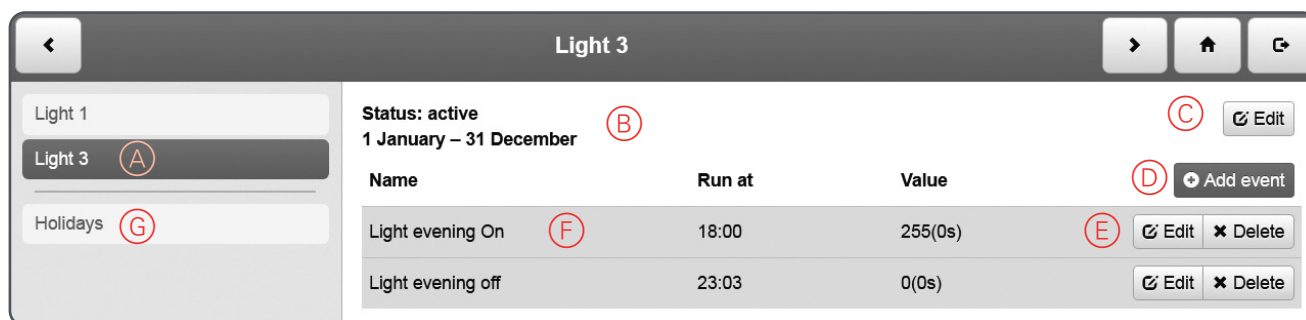
Holiday type	Day of the week
Day of the week	Select a week of the month: 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, last
	Select a day: Monday, Tuesday, ... Sunday
Month	Select a month: January, February, ... December
Duration (days)	Select 1 ... 90 days.
Recurring every year	Checked = yes
	Unchecked = no

Settings for specific date (visualization view)

Table 44: Holiday settings (specific date)

Holiday type	Specific date
From date	Select in calendar view:
	• Year
	• Month
To date	Select in calendar view:
	• Year
	• Month
Month	Select a month: January, February, ... December
	Recurring every year

7.2.4 Configuring from the visualization view of the Scheduler



- Ⓐ *Scheduler*: Schedulers are created in the configurator.
- Ⓑ *Status*: Displays as **active** or **inactive**.
- Ⓒ *Edit Scheduler button*: Set scheduler status with start and end dates, holiday behaviour.
- Ⓓ *Add event button*: Set name, run time (e.g. switching) and value.
- Ⓔ *Edit event button*: Change name, run time (e.g. switching) and value.
- Ⓕ *Event*.
- Ⓖ *Holidays*: Set special time periods for all schedulers.

When an *Object* of an application is linked to a scheduler the user can add, edit and delete *Events*. In addition the user can edit different *Holidays*.

8 Trend logs

Trend logs, or *data logging*, allow the user to store selected data and compare that data over time. Trends can be accessed via the main menu or via the visualization. Trend logs are stored on the Controller's internal memory and automatically synced to the internal microSD card. Use the **Configurator** to add and edit objects.



A user can select different trend views but cannot create new objects.

8.1 Access to trend logs

A user can access the trend logs from either the main menu or the visualization view.

From the main menu

Click the **Trends** button on the main menu.

From the visualization view

Link to all trend logs

- To open the main trends page from the visualization, configure the Trend link in the plan editor of the visualization (see *Links* on page 163).
- To display the trends as a frame within the visualization, configure the Frame in the plan editor of the visualization (see *Frame* on page 166). Trends are not supported on a **Smartphone Visualization** page.

Link to a specific trend log

- ① In the configurator **Trend logs** tab (see page 136), click the **Direct link** button to display the **Direct link** window.

Direct link

Trend log: Voltage NAC

View mode: Day

Multiple trends:

Link: `http://192.168.0.100/scada-vis/trends?id=1&mode=day`

Include IP / host:

- ② In the Direct link window, choose a *Trend* log. The link to the trend log is displayed in the *Link* field.



To link a trend log in the visualization of another Controller, complete the IP address. Tick *Include IP/host* to display the complete IP address in the Link field.

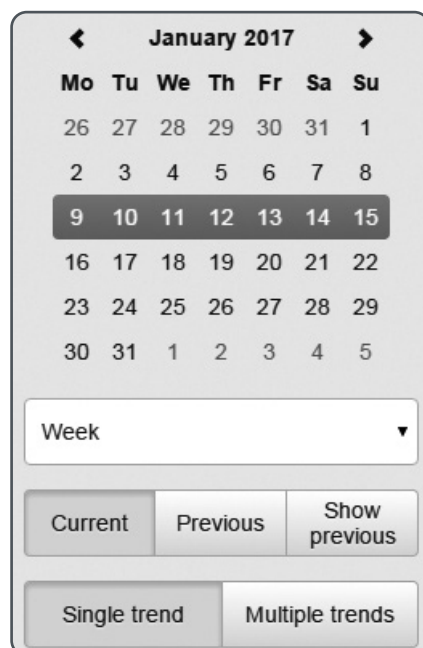
- ③ Copy the *Link* field to use it in the plan editor of the visualization.
- ④ Open the configurator **Visualization** tab. See *Links* on page 163.
- ⑤ Configure a link in the plan editor, using the following settings:

Link to: Select "External link"

External Link: Paste the link copied from the Link field (see step ③)
e.g. /scada-vis/trends?id=1&mode=day

8.2 Views of trend logs

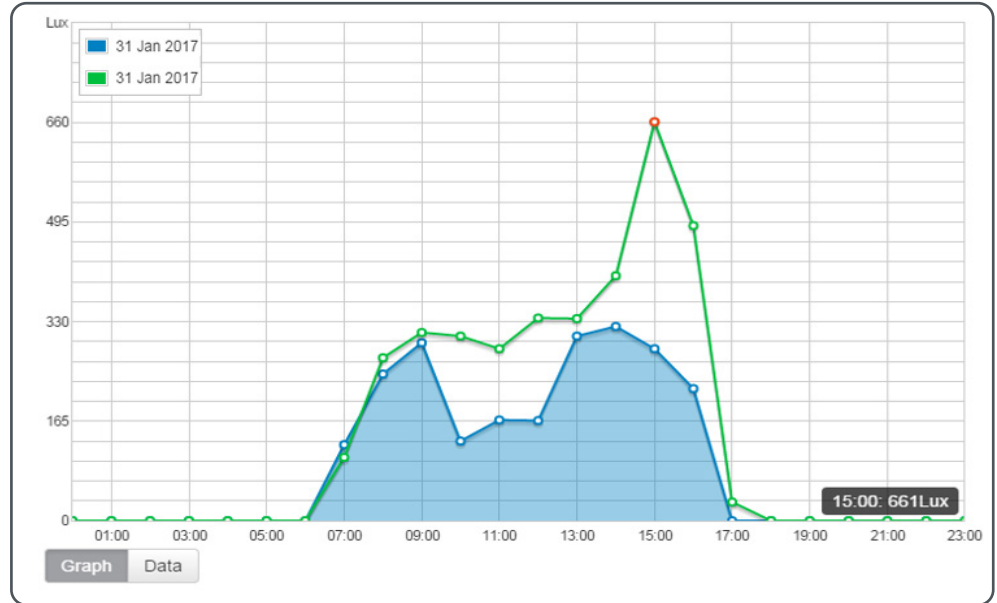
On the *Trends* page, select from different views.



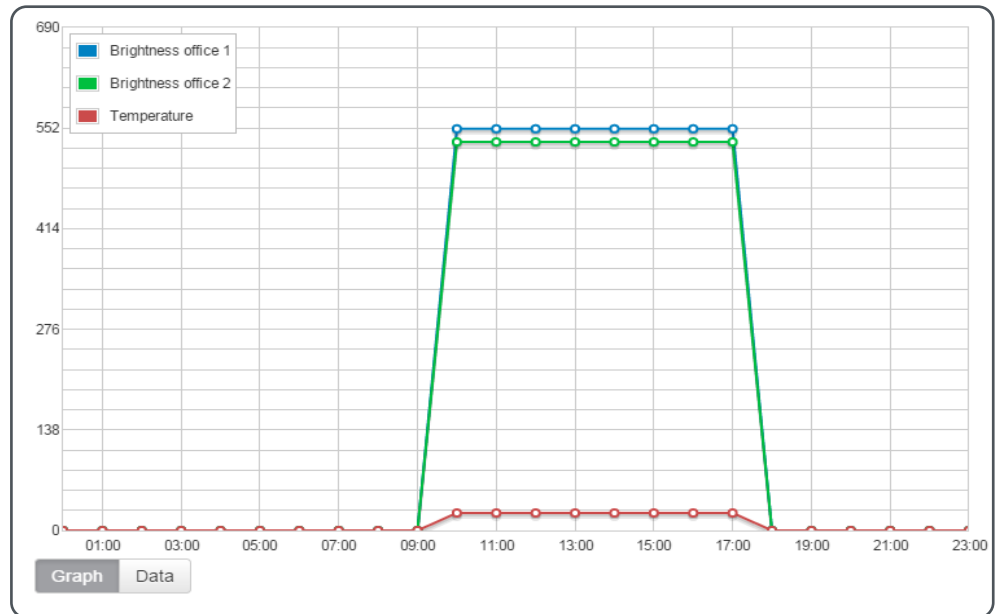
8.2.1 Available trend log views

- View period of trend:
 - *Day*
 - *Week*
 - *Month*
 - *Year*.
- View current and previous trend:
 - **Current:** Click the **Current** button and select the *day/week/month/year* in the calendar that will be the *Current* view. The curve *Current* is always shown.
 - **Previous:** click the **Previous** band and select the *day/week/month/year* in the calendar that will be the *Previous* view. The curve *Previous* is not shown until also the **Show previous** button is clicked.
- View single or multiple trends:
 - **Single trend** button
 - **Multiple trend** button.
- View graph or data:
 - **Graph** button
 - **Data** button.

Example with current and previous trend and period day



Example with multiple trend and period day



8.2.2 Add new trend log

To add a new trend log, click the **Add new trend log** button at the bottom of the trend log tab (see next screen shot). Configure the following trend log parameters.

Table 45: Trend log parameters


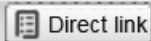
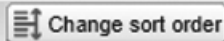
Object	Select object to log.
Name	Name of the trend log.
Category	Categorise trends for better clarity and sort with drag and drop.
Log type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Counter: Sums up the delta between the received value and the last received value (negative delta is not regarded). • Counter with negative delta (negative delta is also taken into account). • Absolute: Saves the actual values.
Trend resolution	Average value of the counted samples for the specific time interval to be displayed on the trend (5, 10, 15, 20, 30 min, 1 hour).

Decimal places	If the object is a floating point type, it is mandatory to enter the number of decimal places.
Resolution data	Storage time for short time data (max. 5 years).
Daily data	Storage time for long term data (max. 10 years).
Always show zero	If checked, the Y-axis begins with 0. If unchecked, the Y-axis begins at lowest real value. Unchecking this option improves trend resolution if values are always far from 0.

8.2.3 Configure trend logs

Configure trend logs in the *Trend logs* tab.

Utilities											Objects											Object logs											Tag map											Schedulers											Trend logs											Scenes											Vis. structure											Visualization										
Name	Object	Log type	Dec...	Trend resoluti...	Resol...	Daily data	Log size	Created	M...	M																																																																																								
Energy	Local/Measureme...	Counter	2	1 hour	180 d...	2 years	40 KB	2017....	↑	↓																																																																																								
Voltage	Local/255/254/Vol...	Absolute va...	2	1 hour	180 d...	2 years	40 KB	2017....	↑	↓																																																																																								



Click the *Change sort order* button to open a dialog and reorder the trend logs using drag & drop.



9 Scenes

The **Scenes** tab, allows easily configured scenes.

Path: **Configurator** → **Scenes** tab → **Scenes** list.

Use a scene to change multiple room functions at the touch of a button. Setting a scene allows dimming of the room lighting to a specific value, move the blinds into the desired position and switch on the power supply to the socket outlets in a room. As an example of a pure lighting scene, control three channels of a dim actuator using the scenes *day*, *night* and *video*.

For a standard scene, the following is needed:

- A **Trigger group** to set different scenes. Use the application *202 - Trigger Control*.
- One **Action selector** for each scene. The action selector is associated with the **Trigger Control**.
- Components for each scene. These components will be controlled via applications (e.g. 56 Lighting).
- Values (e.g. levels and ramp rates) of the components for each scene. The values can be edited or saved online via C-Bus.
- Buttons or functions to set scenes. These buttons can be physical C-Bus push buttons or elements on a screen (see *Visualization* on page 140). Alternatively, a scene can be set by a physical timer or a software function (see *Schedulers* on page 128).

9.1 Configuration

For each scene, configure a *Trigger group* in the **Scenes** list.

Utilities		Objects	Object logs	Tag map	Schedulers	Trend logs	Scenes	Vis. structure	Visualization
ID	Name	Group address	Action selector		Keywords	Sequence	Active	Duplicate	D...
1	Video	Local/Scenes/Scene func...	Video (1)		Video				
2	Day	Local/Scenes/Scene func...	Day (2 - 1%)		Day				
3	Night	Local/Scenes/Scene func...	Night (3)		Night				

Add scene

9.1.1 Add scene

Click the **Add scene** button to open the scene parameters.

Table 46: Scene parameters

Name	Name of the scene
Scene is active	Active: scene is ready for usage.
Group address	Select a trigger group (Application 202 Trigger Control).
Action Selector	For each value of the Action Selector, define the display text. The display text appears in a visualization (see <i>Local and remote scene control</i> on page 138). For example, if a night scene is triggered with value 3, edit a level with the object value 3 and the display text "Night". Click the Levels button to configure levels.
Keywords	Keywords can be used for scripts.

Click **Save** button when parameters are set.

Click a row in the **Scene** list to open the scene parameters for editing.

9.1.2 Add components

A list of objects for one scene is called *Sequence*. Click the symbol in the **Sequence** column (see page 137) to add an object for each component and select values. The following actions are available.

9.1.3 Add objects to a scene

Click the **Add objects** button to open the list of objects. Select the objects required to be controlled by the scene and then click the **Save** button.

9.1.4 Set values to the objects of a scene

Select one or more objects and click the **Set value** button. Select a value and click the **Save** button.

9.1.5 Run scene

When controlling a scene online via C-Bus, click the **Run scene** button.

9.1.6 Save live values

With this function, it allows changing of the values of the components independent of the Controller. For example, prepare a lighting scene by physically setting each light to the brightness required. Then, select the corresponding objects and click the **Save live values** button. The actual values are displayed in the list.

9.1.7 Delete

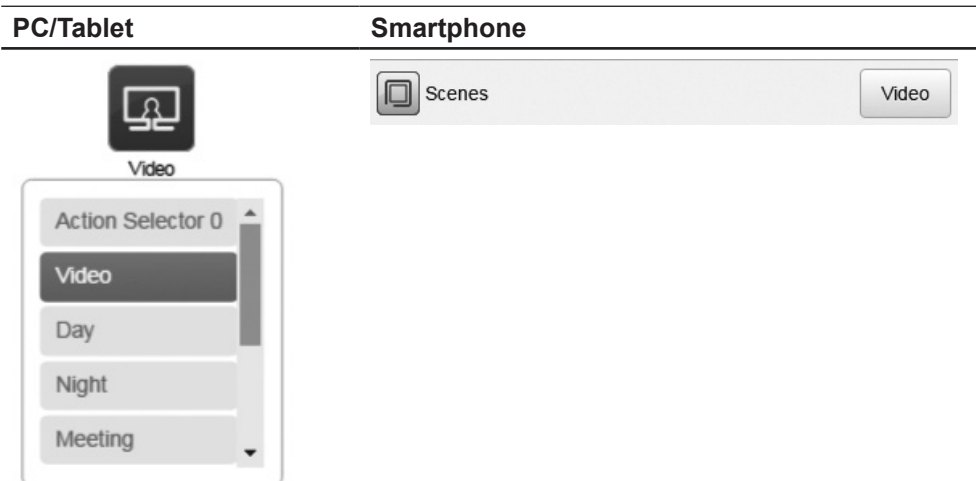
Click the **Delete** button to remove objects from a scene, e.g. to delete unwanted objects from a scene that is duplicated as a starting point.

9.1.8 Duplicate

In many cases, the same trigger groups and components are used in scenes. Click the symbol in the **Duplicate** column (see page 137) to create a copy of a scene.

9.1.9 Local and remote scene control

Scenes can be controlled via a PC/Tablet or a Smartphone visualization.



Remotely control local scenes configured in the Controller by using a C-Bus push-button configured with a scene function:

- ① Configure Controller keys as scene keys.
- ② Use the trigger group of the local scenes.
- ③ Use the values of the action selectors linked with local scenes.

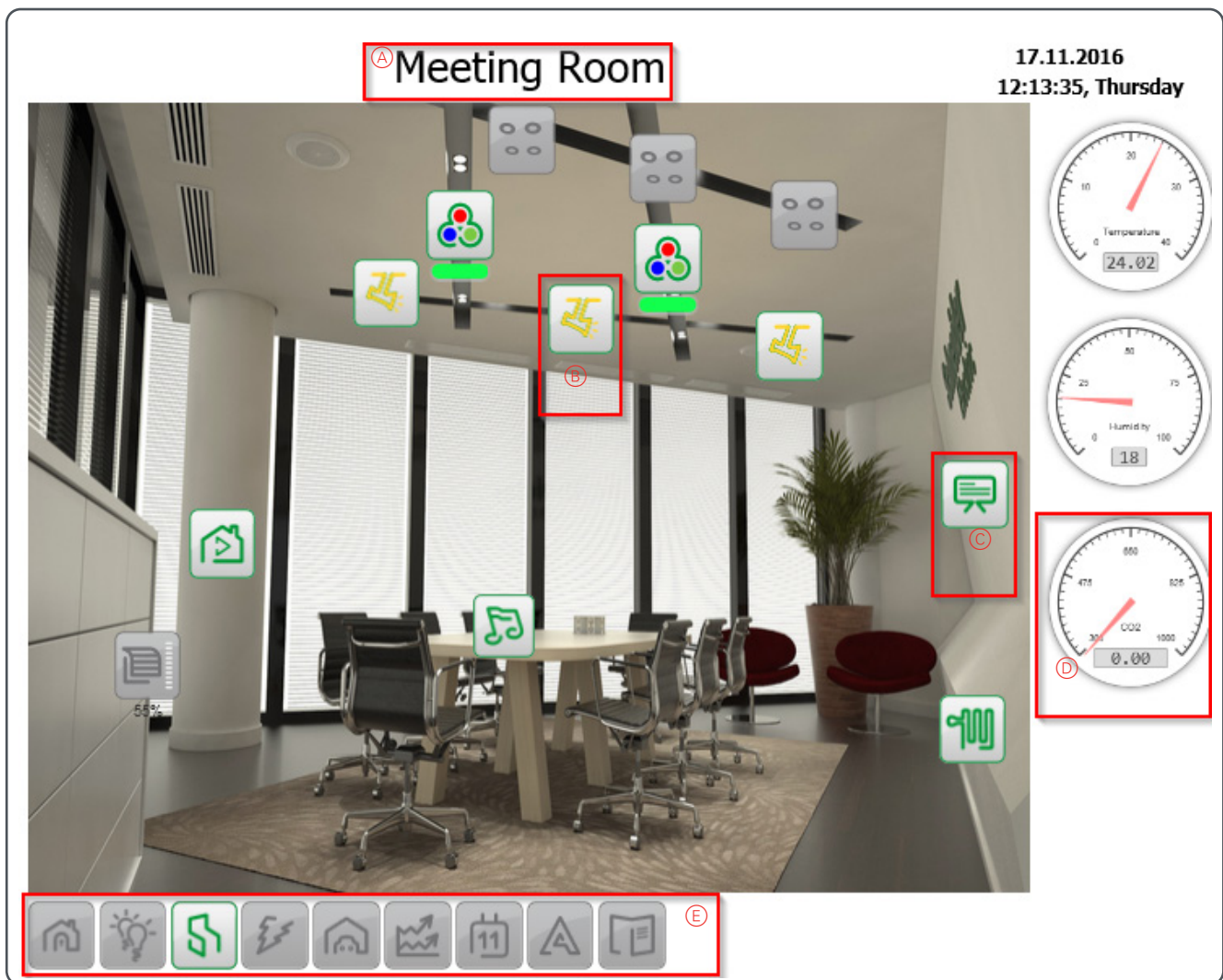
Scenes configured in another C-Bus device can be controlled from the PC/Tablet or Smartphone visualization. The same trigger group can be used in the Controller and the other C-Bus device.

10 Visualization

A visualization is a structured collection of pages called *Plans*. Each plan is linked with a *Level*, which normally represents one floor of a building. A plan can contain graphics, text and control elements. Communication with active elements is based on C-Bus *Objects*.

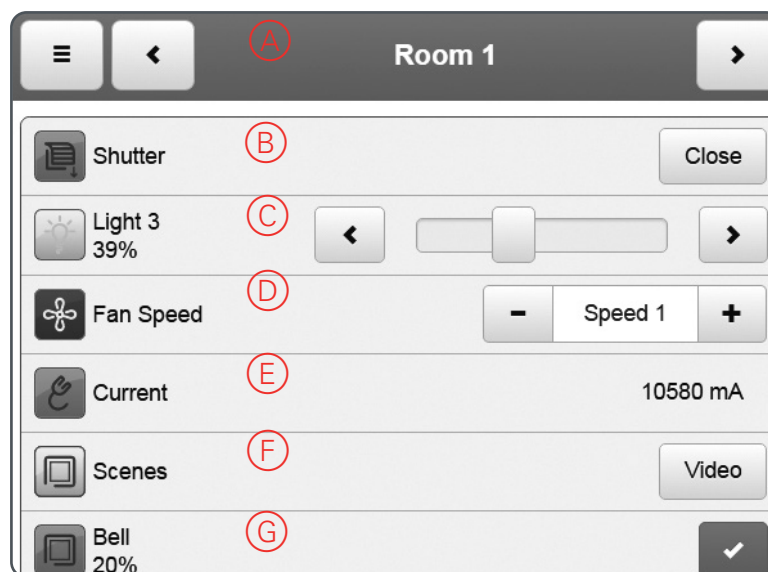
Each plan can be used as *PC/Tablet visualization*, *Smartphone visualization* or both.

10.1 Example of a visualization page for PC/ Tablet



- (A) *Text label*: The name of the plan.
- (B) *Object (switch)*: Touch the object icon for direct control and status indication.
- (C) *Object (control)*: Touch the object to display a slider control to adjust a setting.
- (D) *Gauge*: Touch the selected control element to display a value, e.g. temperature.
- (E) *Links*: Provides access to other visualization pages in the plan. Touch a link to display that visualization page.

10.2 Example of a visualization page for Smartphones



- Ⓐ *Navigation*: Access to all pages (plans), next page, previous page.
- Ⓑ *Shutter/blind - Display*: Tags.
- Ⓒ *Slider - Display*: Percentage (0-100%).
- Ⓓ *Cycle/Fan - Display*: Tags.
- Ⓔ *Read only - Display*: Icon and value.
- Ⓕ *Trigger select - Tags*.
- Ⓖ *Bell press - Display*: Tags.

The **Smartphone Visualization** displays a list with the configured object and link elements. Text label, image, gauge and graph elements are only displayed in the **PC/Tablet Visualization**. Each object, link and frame element can optionally be hidden in the **Smartphone Visualization**.

The **Smartphone Visualization** adapts automatically to the screen size. For **PC/Tablet Visualization**, however, defining the plan size is mandatory. Templates are available for various resolutions and screen types (e.g. landscape WSVGA or portrait HD).

By default, start the **PC/Tablet Visualization** or the **Smartphone Visualization** via the **Start** page.



To create a visualization, click the **Configurator** button.

Configure user access to visualization pages (see *User access* on page 183). Different levels of access can be given to each user for visualization pages (plans), schedulers and trends.

The Network Automation Controller allows for a maximum of 50 users for visualization.

The Application Controller is limited to a maximum of 8 users.

10.2.1 Steps of a visualization

- ① (Optional) Start with a general configuration of the visualization pages in the **Vis. configuration** tab.
- ② Upload any background and Plan images (e.g. icons) via the **Vis. graphics** tab.
- ③ Create at least 1 *Level* and 1 *Plan* in the **Vis. structure** tab (each visualization page is linked to a *Level*).
- ④ (Optional) Create other structure elements such as *Layouts* and *Widgets*.
- ⑤ Add the content to the *Layouts*, *Widgets* and *Plans* in the **Visualization** tab.
- ⑥ When adding objects to the plan, the objects must be available (see *C-Bus objects* on page 42). (An *object* is a C-Bus object in a network with an application and a group.)

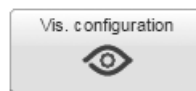
Table 47: Visualization steps

Chapter	Path	Steps
Visualization configuration on page 143	Configurator → Utilities → Vis. configuration or Configurator → Visualization → Vis. configuration button	(Optional) Select general settings for the visualization. Default Settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PC/Tablet sidebar: Shows as overlay. • PC/Tablet view: Centers plans, enables auto-sizing. • PC/Tablet page transition: No transition.
Visualization graphics on page 145	Configurator → Vis. graphics	(Optional) Add graphical elements to include later via the Visualization → Image tab. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Icons: Add icons for new functions. • Images/Backgrounds: Add project-related images. • Fonts: Add fonts for <i>Text labels</i>. • Edit Custom CSS: If available, upload and edit new Cascading Style Sheets.
Layouts and Widgets on page 148	Configurator → Vis. structure → Layout/Widgets	(Optional) Add layouts and widgets to the structure. A <i>Layout</i> can be used as a template for one or more plans (visualization page). A <i>Widget</i> is a small visualization page which pops up when pressing the associated button (icon) on the plan. A widget is linked with an object. The elements for the layouts and widgets must be added in the Visualization tab.
Levels and Plans on page 150	Configurator → Vis. structure → Levels/Plans	Mandatory Add Levels and Plans to the structure. (Minimum = 1 level with 1 plan) A level is usually a part of a building (e.g. ground floor). A plan is a room or a functional overview. Default plan settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plan size: 1024 x 768 • Layout: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> PC/Tablet visualization: show Smartphone visualization: show. The plan elements must be added in the Visualization tab.

Chapter	Path	Steps
Create visualization content on page 152 Links on page 163 Text label on page 164 Image on page 165 Objects on page 156 Gauge on page 167 Frame on page 166 Graph on page 168 Camera on page 167	Configurator → Visualization	Mandatory Create content on a plan, layout or widget <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Link: Navigate to other plans. • Text label: Provides textual information. • Image: Image on the plan, background image or URL. • Object: Controls functions and shows status. • Frame: Shows <i>Scheduler</i> or <i>Trend logs</i>. • Gauge: Displays values. • Graph: Shows a real time graph on a plan. • Camera: Displays the stream of an IP camera.

10.3 Visualization configuration

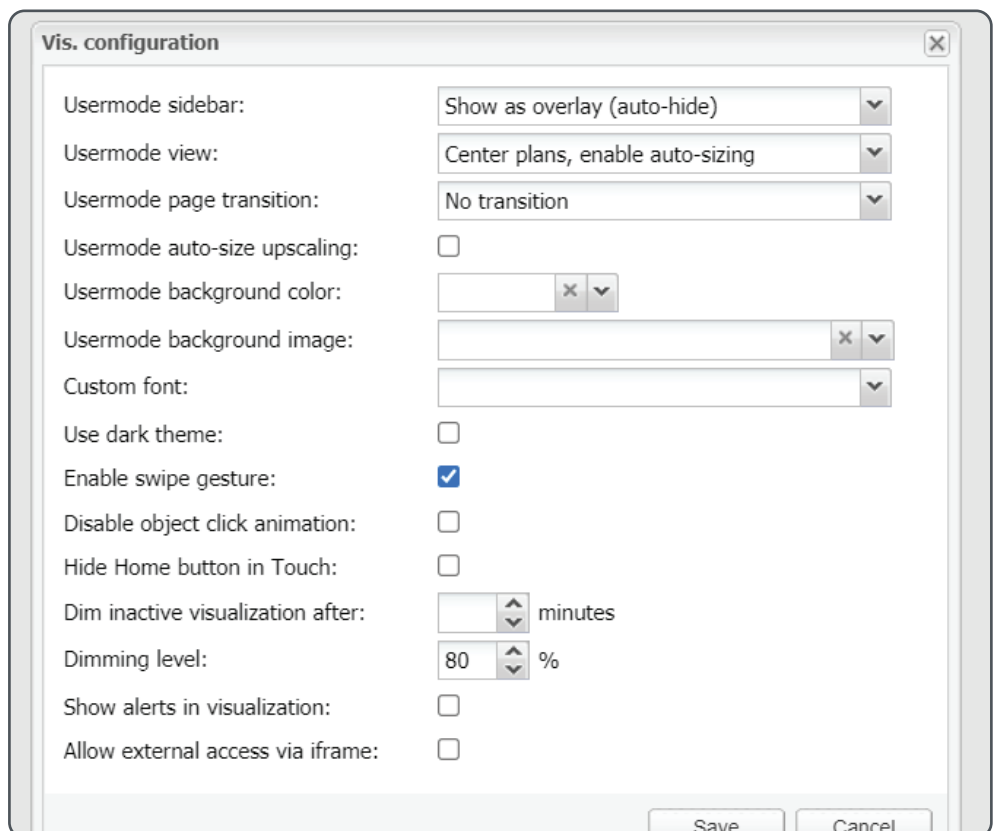
Configure all pages of the visualization via the [Vis. Configuration](#) button:



Open the visualization configuration via one of the following paths:

- [Configurator](#) → [Utilities](#) tab → [Vis. configuration](#) button or
- [Configurator](#) → [Visualization](#) tab → [Vis. Configuration](#) button.

10.3.1 Visualization configuration parameters



Usermode sidebar

Enables a sidebar containing a list of plans in the visualization. The sidebar is used to navigate between visualization pages (plans). Sidebar display options include:

- Show as overlay (auto-hide)
- Show docked
- Hide (full-screen mode)
- Docked/with auto-hide option/hidden.

Usermode view

Defines how plans will be displayed. Options include:

- Align plans to top left, no size limits
- Center plans, limit size
- Center plans, enable auto-sizing
- Center horizontally, auto size width.



Information about auto-sizing

If using Google Chrome, Safari or Firefox, auto-sizing is supported.

Usermode page transition

Enables different transition effects for page changes in the visualization.

Usermode auto/size upscaling

Enables automatic rescaling for multiple screen resolutions.

Usermode background colour

Applies a common background colour for all visualization pages. Alternatively, select a background colour per *Layout* or per *Plan*.

Usermode background image

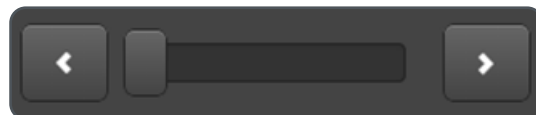
Applies a common background image for all visualization pages. Alternatively, select a background image per *Layout* or per *Plan*.

Custom font

Applies a common font for the visualization.

Use dark theme

Inverts colours, fonts, graphs and controls to match a dark styled visualization.



Enable swipe gesture

Enables swiping between plans on tablets and smartphones.

Disable object click animation

By default, objects change their size slightly when clicked on. Select this option to prevent this effect.

Dim inactive visualization after

An energy-saving feature for battery powered devices. Select the number of minutes before an inactive visualization is dimmed.

Dimming level

Adjusts the brightness level of dimmed screens as a percentage of full brightness.

Show alerts in PC/Tablet

By default, alerts are displayed in the **Alerts** tab within the configurator. When this parameter is enabled, alerts are also displayed as pop-up messages in the *PC/Tablet visualization*:



10.4 Visualization graphics

Graphics must first be uploaded before they can be used in the visualization. In the **Vis. graphics** tab, the following sub-tabs are available:

- **Icons**
- **Images/Backgrounds**
- **Fonts**
- **Edit custom CSS.**

10.4.1 List of Icons



In the **Icons** and **Images/Backgrounds** sub-tabs, you can use the **Filter by name** feature to find content.

10.4.2 Icons and images

Icons

A basic package of icons is pre-installed. Additional icons can be downloaded.

Image formats

JPEG, GIF, PNG and SVG images are supported. The file name can contain letters, numbers, underscore and minus characters.

Name (optional)

Add a name for an image to appear in the list when adding a new object. An image name can contain letters, numbers, underscore and minus characters.

Add/Delete new images

- Use the **Add/Delete** buttons on the bottom of the **Icons** tab and **Images/Backgrounds** tabs to add or delete images.
- Upload individual files as-is, or multiple files in a ZIP archive.
- Max size of an individual graphic: 2 MB.
- Max size of a whole ZIP archive: 32 MB.

10.4.3 Fonts

True Type (TTF) and Open Type (OTF) fonts are supported. In order to access new fonts in the visualization editor, firstly install the font(s) and then click the **Save and reload plan** button.

10.4.4 Edit custom Cascading Style Sheets

Advanced function: The visualization style and design is controlled by a Cascading Style Sheet (CSS). The CSS determines the style of all control buttons, *Smartphone visualization*, *Scheduler* and *Trend*.

Install a modified CSS containing different style definitions for the visualization elements.



Any replacement CSS must contain all of the classes and definitions of the original CSS to avoid degrading the appearance and functionality of the visualization pages.

10.5 Visualization structure

Use the **Vis. Structure** tab to create all building *Levels* and *Plans*.

Additionally, it allows creation of *Layouts* and *Widgets*.

A *Plan* is a visualization page, which can contain graphics, text and control elements.

A *Layout* is an advanced background layer for plans. The layout can:

- contain the same type of elements as a plan, and
- be associated with one or many plans.

All elements of a layout are visible in the background of the plan, while elements of the plan are displayed in the foreground. Typically, a layout contains common elements for the plans, such as menu buttons or time and date.

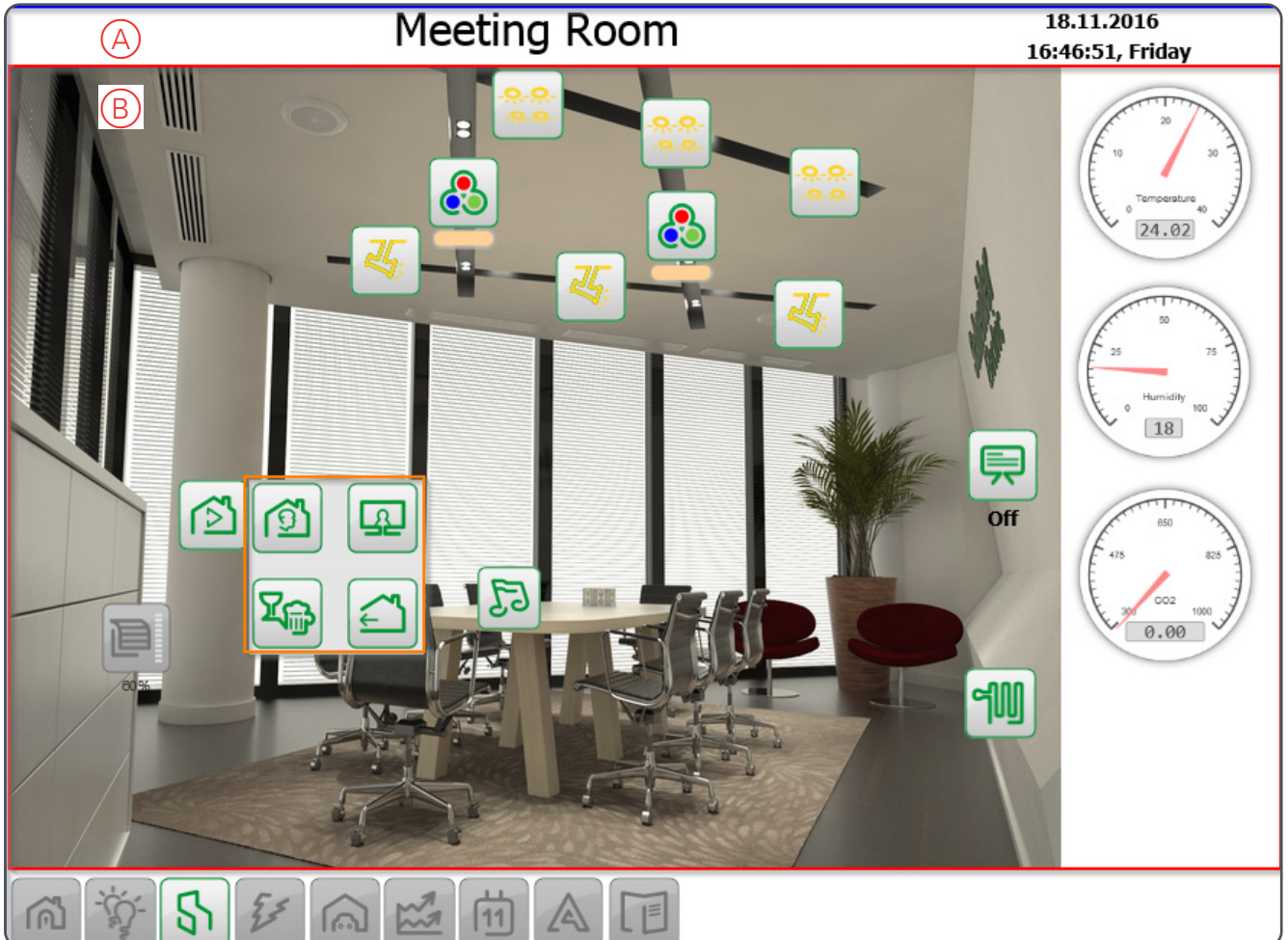
The dimensions (pixel size) of the layout and plan can be different or identical. The center point of both layout and plan is the same when displayed in the visualization.

A *Widget* is a small visualization page which can pop-up on top of the plan when a button is clicked or tapped.



The widget size must always be smaller than the plan size.

Example of a Plan with a Layout and a Widget



Ⓐ Layout: The area in the blue frame.

Ⓑ Plan: The area in the red frame.

Ⓒ Widgets: The area in the orange frame.



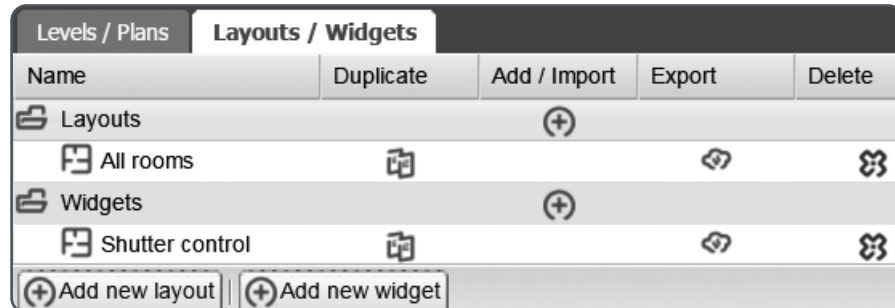
Content cannot be added to *Layouts*, *Widgets* and *Plans* using the **Vis. Structure** tab. Once the structure is created using the **Vis. Structure** tab, add the content via the **Visualization** tab.

10.5.1 Layouts and Widgets

Layouts/Widgets are optional design elements that can be used on plans.

A layout can be added to a plan (see *Levels and Plans* on page 150).

A widget can be added to an object (see *Objects* on page 156).



Add new Layout/Widget

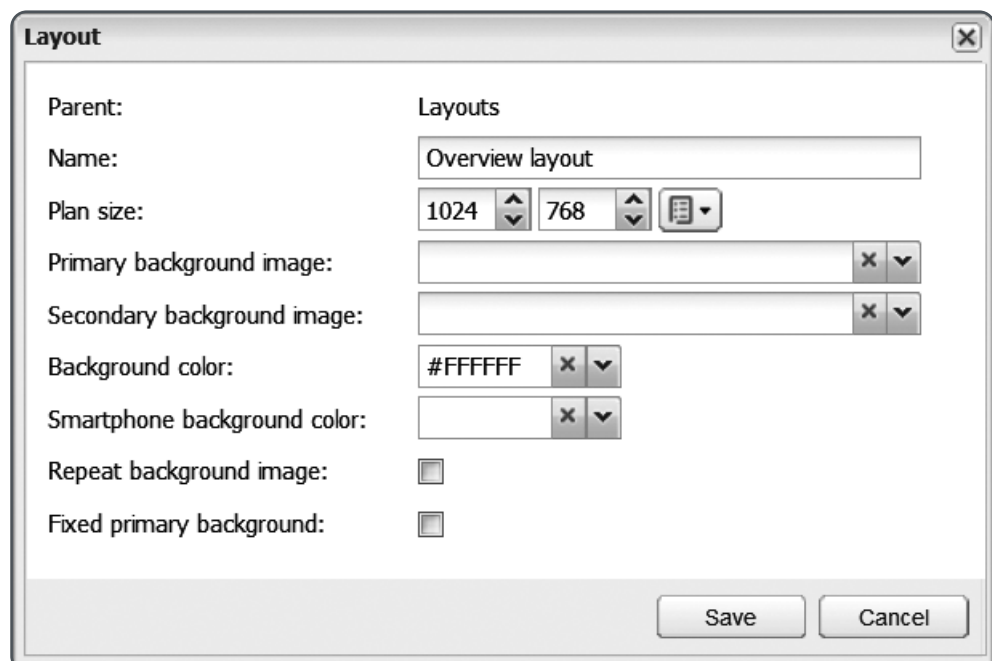
Add a new *Layout* or *Widget* with these controls:

- The **+** button (layout or widget)
- The **Add new layout** button
- The **Add new widget** button.

Actions with levels including all plans or individual plans

- Export as file (*.tar) with the **Export** button
- Import a file (*.tar) with the **Add/Import** button **+**
- Duplicate with the **Duplicate** button
- Delete with the **Delete** button **🗑️**

Example of Layout parameters



Plan Size

The size of the *Layout* and the *Plan* can be different. When displayed, the center point of both layout and plan is the same. The *Widget* size must be smaller than the plan on which it is placed.

Background images

First import the image via the **Vis. Graphics** tab. First import the image via the **Vis. Graphics** tab.

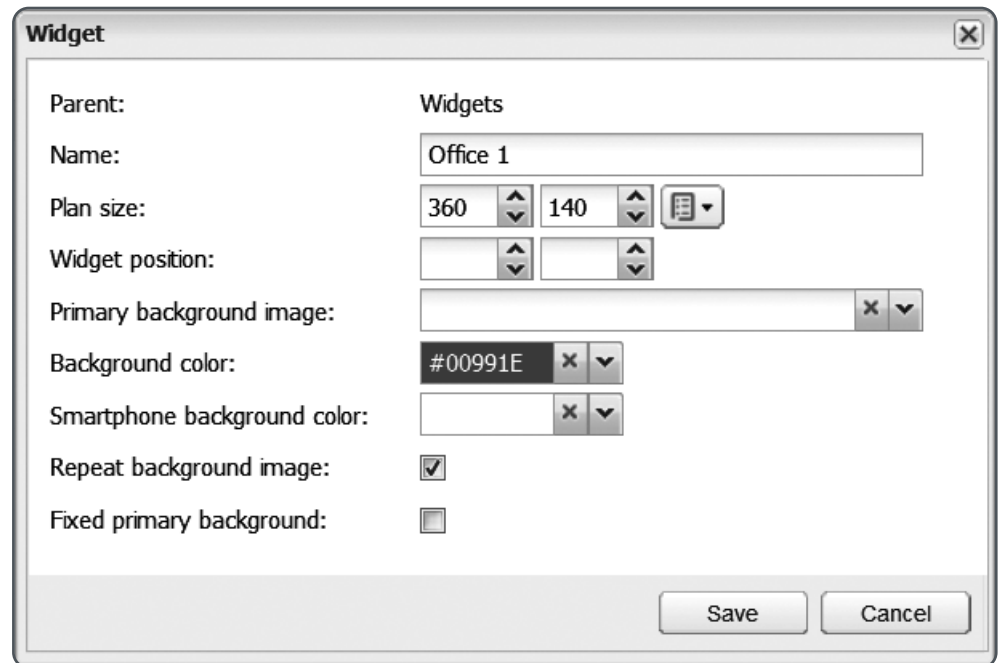
A background image is aligned with the top left corner of the plan and is displayed at its original size.

In the **Visualization** Tab, images can be placed as image elements and positioned freely when the page is designed.

Repeat background image

A small image can be repeated (tiled) across the *Layout*.

Example of Widget parameters



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Widget" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog is organized into two columns. The left column contains labels for various parameters, and the right column contains the corresponding input fields and controls.

Label	Value/Control
Parent:	Widgets
Name:	Office 1
Plan size:	360 (width) 140 (height) [Icon]
Widget position:	[X] [Y] (with up/down arrows)
Primary background image:	[Field] [X] [v]
Background color:	#00991E [X] [v]
Smartphone background color:	[Field] [X] [v]
Repeat background image:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Fixed primary background:	<input type="checkbox"/>

At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

Widget position

By default, *Widgets* are displayed next to the icon which calls the widget. Define another position on the plan for the widget if desired.

10.5.2 Levels and Plans

A *Plan* is visualization page which can contain graphics, text and control elements. In the **Vis. structure** tab, *Plans* are linked to the *Levels*. Define the size and background colours and images in the **Vis. structure** tab, however the content of a plan has to be added in the **Visualization** tab.

Levels usually represent a part of a building, such as a floor. Levels can also be used for different functions such as lighting, shutter control and heating. Use levels as structure elements for plans in the navigation/sidebar of the visualization.

The **Levels/plans** sub-tab In the **Vis. Structure** tab contains the function icons and buttons for creating and editing levels and plans.

← ect logs Tag map Schedulers Trend logs Scenes Vis. structure Visualization Vis. graphics Scripti									
Levels / Plans		Layouts / Widgets							
Name	Visible	Description	Du...	Mov...	M...	Add / Import	Export	De...	
Right side			☰	↑	↓	+	☰	☰	
Room 4	PC/Tablet, Smartphone		☰	↑	↓		☰	☰	
Left side			☰	↑	↓	+	☰	☰	
Overview	PC/Tablet, Smartphone		☰	↑	↓		☰	☰	
Room 1	PC/Tablet, Smartphone		☰	↑	↓		☰	☰	
Room 2	PC/Tablet, Smartphone		☰	↑	↓		☰	☰	



Click the **Change Sort Order** button to open a dialog and reorder the levels/plans using drag & drop.

Add new level

Add a new main *Level* with the **Add new level** button (several main levels are possible). Protect access to the level with a Pin Code (3–8 digits).

Add a second level or plan

Add a second *Level* or a new *Plan* by clicking the **Add/Import** button:

Plans can be added to a second level, but not a third level. Protect access to the level with a Pin Code (3–8 digits).

Select an action ✕

Actions with levels including all plans or individual plans

- Re-order within a Level using the **Move up/down** buttons
- Export as file (*.tar) with the **Export** button
- Import a file (*.tar) with the **Add/Import** button
- Duplicate with the **Duplicate** button
- Delete with the **Delete** button

Example of plan parameters

Plan

Parent: Office Building

Name: Meeting Room

Plan size: 1024 768

Layout: Overview layout

PC/Tablet visualization: Show

Smartphone visualization: Show

Pin code:

Primary background image: x v

Secondary background image: x v

Background color: #FFFFFF x v

Smartphone background color: x v

Repeat background image:

Fixed primary background:

Save Cancel

Plan size in pixels

Click the plan size button to set the plan size:



Enter specific values or select a pre-set size:

- iPad landscape, fullscreen (XGA) 1024 x 748
- iPad landscape, browser (XGA) 1024 x 672
- iPad portrait, fullscreen (XGA) 768 x 1004
- iPad portrait, browser (XGA) 768 x 928
- Tablet landscape (WSVGA) 1024 x 600
- Tablet portrait (WSVGA) 600 x 1024
- Laptop / Tablet landscape (WXGA) 1280 x 800
- Laptop / Tablet portrait (WXGA) 800 x 1280
- Laptop / Tablet landscape (HD) 1360 x 768
- Laptop / Tablet portrait (HD) 768 x 1360
- Big screen (Full HD) 1920 x 1080

Layout (optional)

Assign a layout to the plan. (First create a layout—see *Layouts and Widgets* on page 148).

PC/Tablet visualization and Smartphone visualization

- Show
- Show make default (= **Start** page)
- Hide.

Background images (optional)

Firstly import the image via the **Vis. Graphics** tab.

A background image is aligned with the top left corner of the plan and displayed at its original size.

In the **Visualization** Tab, images can be placed as elements and positioned freely when the page is designed.

Repeat background image

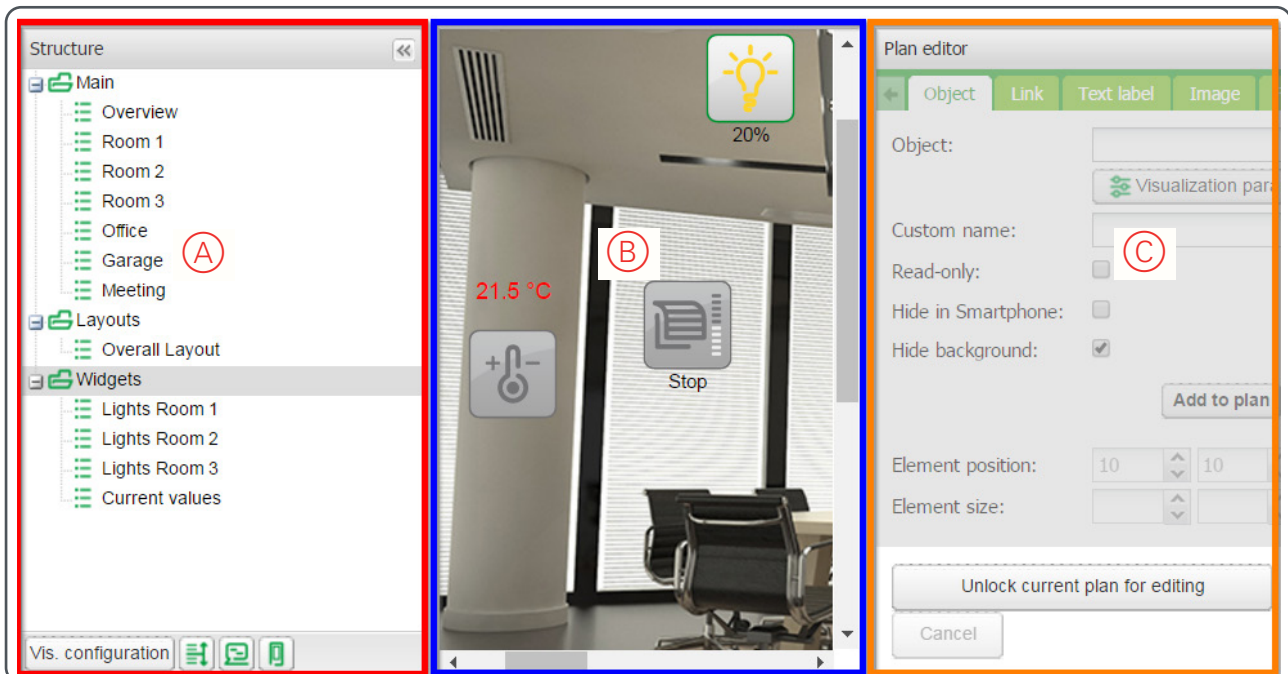
An small image can be repeated (tiled) across the *Layout*.

10.6 Create visualization content

In the **Visualization** tab, add or modify the content to the plans, layouts and widgets. Toggle between editing and visualization mode.

- In visualization mode select a plan, layout or widget in the structure and test functions on the visualization map.
- In editing mode add/modify content on the visualization map using plan editor.

Areas of the Visualization tab in the visualization mode



- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| (A) Structure panel | List of <i>Plans</i> , <i>Layouts</i> and <i>Widgets</i> created in <i>Vis. structure</i> . |
| (B) Visualization map | Content of the <i>Plan/Layout/Widget</i> currently selected in the structure. |
| (C) Plan editor | Tool to add and configure elements which are visible in the visualization map. |

Main steps of editing

To add or modify content, follow these steps:


- ① Select a *Plan*, *Layout* or *Widget* in the **Structure panel**.
- ② Click the **Unlock current plan for editing** button to activate editing mode.
- ③ Add content using the **Plan editor**.
- ④ Select elements on the **Visualization map** and modify them as needed.
- ⑤ Click on the **Save and reload plan** button to finish editing.
- ⑥ Perform a final check by opening the **PC/Tablet visualization** and the **Smartphone visualization**.

10.6.1 Structure panel


Use the structure panel to select a *Plan*, *Layout* or *Widget* for configuration.

10.6.2 Additional tools and functions


Reorder Smart phone objects

In a newly created *Smartphone visualization*, the objects are listed in a default order. Click the  button at the bottom of the structure panel to reorder the objects.

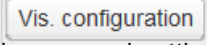
Access to PC/Tablet visualization

Click the  button at the bottom of the structure panel to open the final **PC/Tablet visualization** in the default browser.

Access to Smartphone Visualization



Click the  button at the bottom of the structure panel to open the final **Smartphone visualization** in the default browser.

Visualization configuration

Click the  button at the bottom of the structure panel to open the visualization general settings. See *Visualization configuration* on page 143.

Size of a Plan/Layout/Widget

In editing mode, modify the size of the selected visualization map using selectors at the bottom of the structure panel. See *Levels and Plans* on page 150.

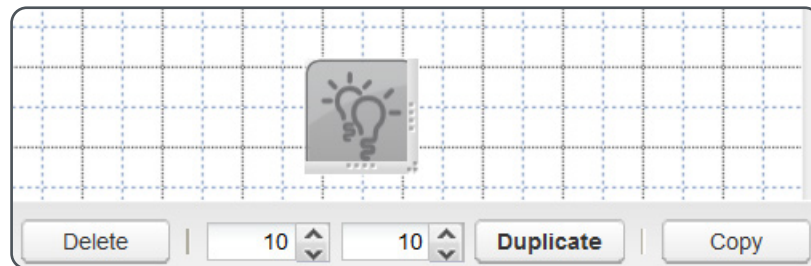
Plan size:  

10.6.3 Visualization map

Use the visualization map to test the visualization and to edit while in editing mode. Toggle between visualization and editing modes using the buttons on the bottom of the plan editor.

Editing functions on the visualization map

In editing mode, the visualization map is shown with a 20 × 20 pixel grid.



When an object is selected, the buttons on the bottom of the visualization map can be used for the following functions.

Table 48: Visualization map function buttons

Delete	Delete the object.
Duplicate	Make a copy of the object. The duplicate is placed relative to the original according to the coordinates entered in the selectors (0, 0 places the duplicate on top of the original).
Copy	Copies the object to the clipboard, to paste into another plan/layout/widget.
Paste	Pastes the object from the clipboard. This button is hidden when the clipboard is empty.

10.7 Plan editor

Use the Plan Editor to add or modify elements, including size and position to the visualization map.

Table 49: Plan editor elements

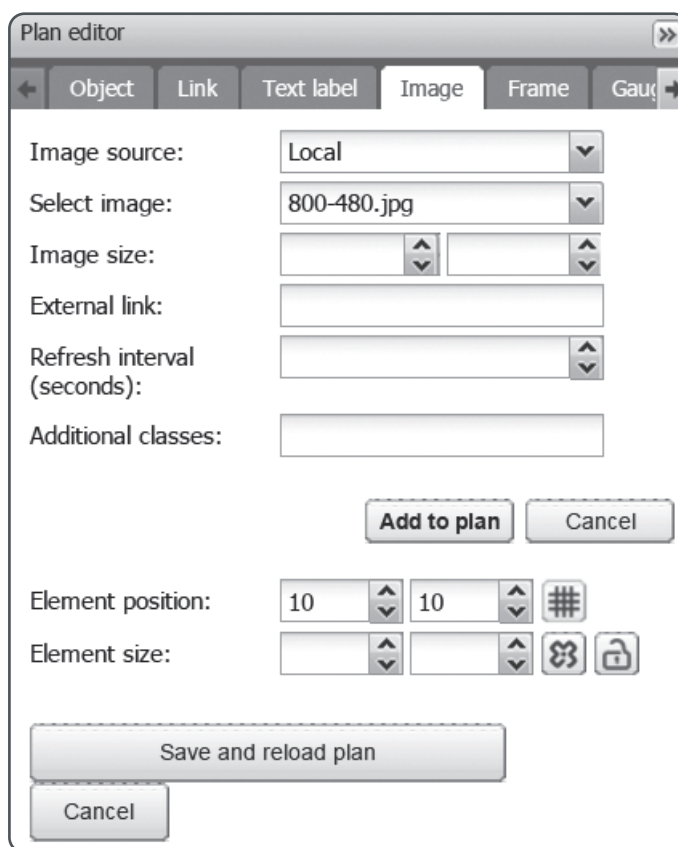
Object	Display/control the value of an <i>Object</i> in the Object list, i.e. a C-Bus object in a network with an application and a group. See <i>Objects</i> on page 156.
Link	Open another plan. See <i>Links</i> on page 163.
Text label*	Static text string, e.g. the name of the room. See <i>Text label</i> on page 164.
Image*	Local static image stored in the Vis. graphics tab or external link to a web page, e.g. URL with dynamic content. See <i>Image</i> on page 165.
Frame	Show internal/external web pages on the visualization page. See <i>Frame</i> on page 166.
Gauge*	An analogue graphic element to display values. See <i>Gauge</i> on page 167.
Camera	Used to show a stream (MJPEG) from an IP camera. See <i>Camera</i> on page 167.
Graph*	Is used to show real time graphs of logged values. See <i>Graph</i> on page 168.

* These elements are not displayed in the Smartphone Visualization.

10.7.1 Actions in the plan editor

The following actions can be applied for all elements in the plan editor.

Plan editor (example view)



Add a new element

- 1 Click the **Unlock current plan for editing** button (if visualization mode is active).
- 2 Select and edit parameter values.
- 3 Click the **Add to plan** button.

Modify an existing element

- 1 Click the **Unlock current plan for editing** button (if visualization mode is active).
- 2 Select element on the visualization.
- 3 Select and edit parameter values.
- 4 Click the **Apply** button.


Save or cancel changes before changing to visualization mode

- Click the **Save and reload plan** button to save your changes.
- Click the **Cancel** button at the bottom of the plan to cancel your changes.


Element position

The element will be placed on the visualization map in the position entered here (default 10,10 = top left corner).



You can snap an element to the visualization grid by clicking the  button.

Element size

- Optionally change the size of elements such as icons, images or frames here.
- Once the element is added to the plan, directly resize the element on the visualization map by dragging the nodes on the borders (stretch) or the corners (keep ratio).
- Click the **Restore** button  to restore the element's original size.

10.7.2 Main steps of editing

Follow these steps to add or modify content:

- ① Select a *Plan*, *Layout* or *Widget* in the **Structure panel**.
- ② Click the **Unlock current plan for editing** button to activate editing mode.
- ③ Add content using the **Plan editor**.
- ④ To modify an element, select the element on the **Visualization map**.
Position, copy, duplicate or delete elements on the visualization map. It is also possible to send values. Many object elements have additional functions in the PC/Tablet visualization. See *Objects* on page 156.
- ⑤ Click the **Save and reload plan** button to finish editing.
- ⑥ Perform a final check by opening the **PC/Tablet Visualization** and the **Smartphone Visualization**. Text label, image, gauge and graph elements are only displayed in the **PC/Tablet Visualization**. Each object, link and frame element can optionally be hidden in the **Smartphone Visualization**.



After changing settings, refresh the browser to view the changes in the visualization. Refresh via browser menu or use the keyboard short-cuts [Ctrl] + [N] or [Ctrl] + [F5].

10.7.3 Objects

In a visualization, *Objects* are used to control or monitor different functions. Depending on the applications and the function, different *Control types* and parameters can be set.

To configure a control type, open the **Object** tab of the **Plan editor**.

Path: **Visualization** tab → **Structure** → **Plan editor** → **Object** tab.

Steps

- ① Select an object in the **Object** tab of the plan editor.
- ② Click the **Visualization parameters** button:
 - Select the control type, additional parameters and then save.
 - These parameters can also be edited in the **Objects** list (see *Edit and test objects* on page 107).
- ③ Select other parameters in the **Objects** tab of the plan editor.
- ④ Add the configured object to the plan with the **Add to plan** button.
- ⑤ Check the function:
 - On the plan it allows sending of values.
 - Complex control types like the *Circular slider* are not visible until the plan is reloaded. Click the **Save and reload plan** button on the plan editor.
 - On the **PC/Tablet Visualization** and the **Smartphone Visualization**, check the final functions of the element. Open the visualizations from the **Start** page.



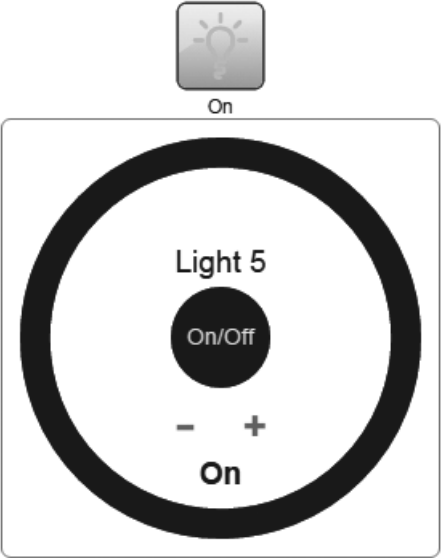
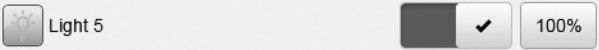
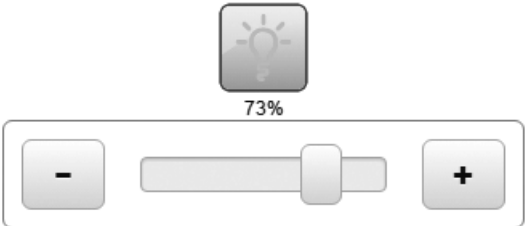


After changing the settings, refresh the browser to see the changes in the visualization. Refresh via the browser menu or use the keyboard short cuts [Ctrl] + [N] or [Ctrl] + [F5].



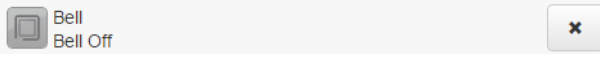

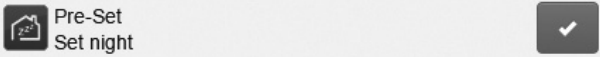

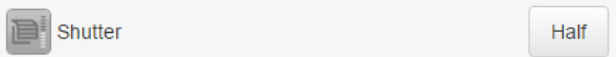
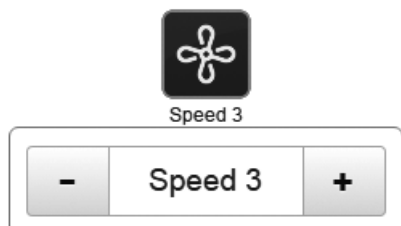
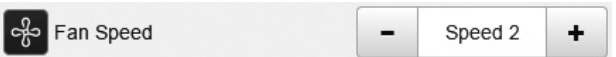
To use names (tags) instead of values, add and edit levels in the **Objects** list (see *Edit and test objects* on page 107). In the case of the shutter/blind, for example, add levels for additional control functions and optionally use the *Tag map* (see *Add new tags* on page 112).


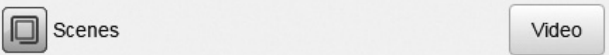
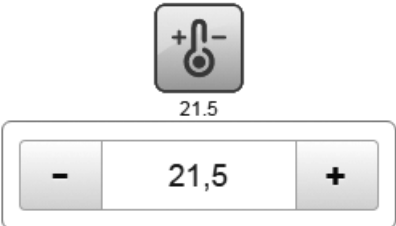
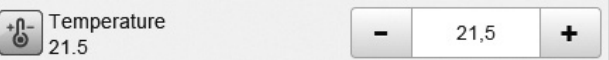
Overview of control types

Different control types are available, depending on the application.

Table 50: Control types

Application/Description	Control type
48-127 Lighting and related 228 Measurement 250 User parameter values <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • On/Off button • Nudge/Steps: -, + • Value or name (tag) for levels is displayed 	Circular slider (PC/Tablet): 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Circular slider opens via click on icon • For Circular Slider only, you can adjust the size of the control on the Visualisation page via the control size scale. 	Circular slider (Smartphone): 
48-127 Lighting and related 228 Measurement 250 User parameter values <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vertical or horizontal slider • Nudge/Steps: - and + 	Slider (PC/Tablet): 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • Horizontal slider • Nudge/Steps: - and + 	Slider (Smartphone): 
48-127 Lighting and related 250 User parameter boolean <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Value or name (tag) for level is displayed 	Toggle (PC/Tablet): 

Application/Description	Control type
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • Value or name (tag) for level is displayed 	Toggle (Smartphone): 
48-127 Lighting and related <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a value when button is pressed and 0 when released • Value or name (tag) for level is displayed 	Doorbell (PC/Tablet): 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • Sends a value when button is pressed and 0 when released • Value or name (tag) for level is displayed 	Doorbell (Smartphone): 
48-127 Lighting and related <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a value when button is pressed • Value or name (tag) for level is displayed 	Pre-Set (PC/Tablet): 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • Sends a value when button is pressed • Value or name (tag) for level is displayed 	Pre-Set (Smartphone): 
48-127 Lighting and related <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a value when button is pressed (level) • 3 levels are pre-set (level translation mode): -Close (0) -Stop (5) -Open (255) • Additional levels can be added to reach positions (e.g. 128 = Half) 	Shutter/Blind (PC/Tablet): 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • List with levels opens when button is pressed 	Shutter/Blind (Smartphone): 
48-127 Lighting and related <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends next value when + or - button is pressed • Cycle: -max. to min. level -min. to max. level • Levels: names and values must be set • Actual level is displayed 	Cycle/Fan (PC/Tablet): 
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • Sends next value when + or - button is pressed • Actual level is displayed 	Cycle/Fan (Smartphone): 

Application/Description	Control type
<p>202 Trigger Control (Set scenes)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a value when button is pressed (action selector) • Levels: can be edited in the Visualization tab or Scenes tab • Actual level is displayed 	<p>Trigger select (PC/Tablet):</p>  <p>The visualization shows a 'Video' icon above a vertical list of options: 'Action Selector 0', 'Video', 'Day', 'Night', and 'Meeting'. The 'Video' option is currently selected and highlighted.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • Sends a value when button is pressed • Actual level is displayed 	<p>Trigger select (Smartphone):</p>  <p>The visualization shows a 'Scenes' button with a square icon and a 'Video' button with a play icon.</p>
<p>228 Measurement</p> <p>250 User parameter values</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends next value when + or – button is pressed • Direct input • Decimal places • Nudge/steps: step width • Min. and max. value 	<p>Direct input/Step +/- (PC/Tablet):</p>  <p>The visualization shows a temperature icon with a plus/minus symbol above the value '21.5'. Below it is a control panel with a minus button, the value '21,5', and a plus button.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom name • Sends next value, when + or – button is pressed • Direct input 	<p>Direct input/Step +/- (Smartphone):</p>  <p>The visualization shows a temperature icon with a plus/minus symbol above the value 'Temperature 21.5'. To the right is a control panel with a minus button, the value '21,5', and a plus button.</p>

Visualization parameters and control type

Control types are described in *Overview of control types* on page 157.

Access the visualization parameters in two ways:

- Click the **Visualization parameters** button in the **Object** tab of the plan editor.
- Click the **Vis. parameters** button in the **Objects** list (see *Edit and test objects* on page 107).



When starting in the **Object** tab of the plan editor, select an object there first and then go to *Visualization parameters* and select the *Control type*.

Slider and *Shutter/Blind* control types are explained below.

Slider

Example

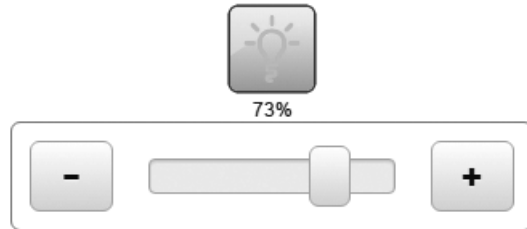
Application/Description

48-127 Lighting/Lighting like

- Vertical or horizontal slider
- Nudge/Steps: – and +

Control type

Slider (PC/Tablet):



Slider (Smartphone):

- Slider opens via click on icon

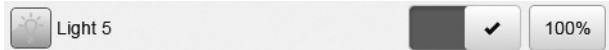


Table 51: Visualization parameters for slider

Control type	Slider										
Value display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Percentage (0-100) • Level (0-255) • Tags <p>In the example, <i>Tags</i> is selected. The levels are set in the <i>Objects</i> list of the <i>Levels</i> column. Path: <i>Configurator</i> → <i>Objects</i> tab → <i>Objects</i> list.</p>										
	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Levels</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 40%;">Object value:</td> <td style="width: 20%;">0 - 0%</td> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: center;">▼</td> <td style="width: 20%;">Display text:</td> <td style="width: 10%;">Off</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Object value:</td> <td>255 - 100%</td> <td style="text-align: center;">▼</td> <td>Display text:</td> <td>On</td> </tr> </table> <p style="text-align: left; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="+ Add level"/> </p> </div>	Object value:	0 - 0%	▼	Display text:	Off	Object value:	255 - 100%	▼	Display text:	On
Object value:	0 - 0%	▼	Display text:	Off							
Object value:	255 - 100%	▼	Display text:	On							
Ramp rate	Set the time to reach the value (from 0 to 255): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 0 s (instantaneous) • Maximum: 15 min. 										
Minimum value	0 Example: 25 = Dimming starts at 10%.										
Maximum value	255 Example: 230 = Dimming stops at 90%.										
Nudge/step value	Step width for control: 1-255 (e.g. 25 = steps in 10%).										
Slider colour	Select a colour for the slider.										
Background colour	Select (pre-set: no colour).										
Round line cap	Use a rounded shape at the beginning and end of the circle line.										
Hide title	Do not display the default or custom name.										
Hide nudge buttons	Disable the step + and – buttons.										
Line thickness	Select the line thickness.										
Size	Select the control size.										
Custom On/Off label	Change the text displayed for the On/Off button in the center of the controller.										

When all parameters are selected, press the **Save** button. Now set the parameters in the **Object** tab of the plan editor (see *Object element parameters* on page 162).

Shutter/Blind

Example

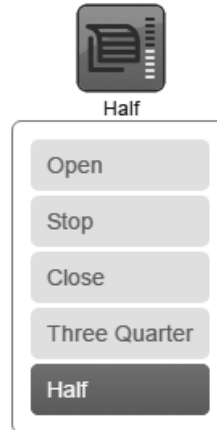
Application/Description

48-95 Lighting/Lighting like

Control type

Shutter/Blind (PC/Tablet):

- Sends a value when button is pressed (level)
- 3 levels are pre-set (level translation mode):
 - Close (0)
 - Stop (5)
 - Open (255)
- Additional levels can be added to reach positions (e.g. 128 = Half)



Shutter/Blind (Smartphone):

- Custom name
- List with levels opens when button is pressed

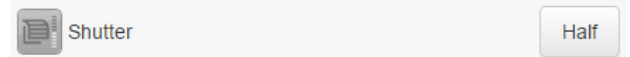


Table 52: Visualization parameters for shutter/blind

Control type	Shutter/blind
Value display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Percentage (0-100) • Level (0-255) • Tags <p><i>Tags</i> must be selected. Set the levels in the Objects list of the Levels column. The levels <i>Close</i> (0), <i>Stop</i> (5) and <i>Open</i> (255) are pre-set. These values are used in the level translation mode. Each level triggers a command.</p> <p>For added convenience, set additional position values (levels) in the range 3% to 97% (7-247).</p> <p>In the example, the pre-set values and 2 additional levels are set in the Objects list of the Levels column.</p> <p>Path: Configurator → Objects tab → Objects list.</p>
Show icons in PC/ Tablet	<p>Icons can be displayed instead of names. Add icons in the Object tab of the plan editor, using the Additional icons button.</p> <p>Path: Configurator → Visualization tab → Plan editor → Object tab.</p>

Global and local parameters

By default, use global visualization parameters for each object. If using several elements to control an object, use local visualization parameters.

Initially, global and local parameters are the same. Change the local parameters, for example, to use one button for dimming with a slider and another to switch on and off with a toggle button. In this case, select different control types in the local parameters of each object element.

Access global and local parameters via the **Visualization parameters** button in the plan editor **Object** tab.



Local parameters cannot be set in the **Objects** list.

Object element parameters

Configure object elements in the **Object** tab of the plan editor.



After selecting an object, open the **Visualization parameters** and select the **Control type**. Now select the object's element parameters.

Table 53: Object element parameters

Object	Select object from the drop down list.
Visualization parameters	Click this button and select the Control type and other parameters, then save. Then continue setting the following parameters .
Custom name	A unique name for the object. <i>Custom name</i> is used for some control types and for the Smartphone Visualization .
Read only	Select this option to only monitor, not control, values.
Hide in smartphone	Select object is not visible in Smartphone Visualization .
Hide background	Show icon without background.
Pin code	Add a PIN to protect the object element value. Once set, the PIN is required whenever an attempt is made to change the value.
Widget	Assign a Widget that opens when the element is pressed. The widget must first be created so that it appears in the list. A widget cannot be tested in the editor mode, only in PC/Tablet Visualization .
Display mode	Display mode refers to the first level of visualization. The options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Icon and value• Icon only• Value only. Additional elements can be opened for the control. See <i>Overview of control types</i> on page 157.
Default icon	The icon which is displayed when no other icon is assigned to the actual value (See Additional icons below). For same control types, set an <i>On icon</i> and an <i>Off icon</i> .
Smartphone icon	(Optional) If different icons are required between the PC/Tablet and Smartphone visualizations, use this parameter to set a different icon for the Smartphone visualization.
Font size	Affects the font size of the value display
Text style	Affects the text style (e.g. bold, italic) of the value display
Show value background	A solid background is displayed behind the value.
Show control (Inline in PC/Tablet)	Shows the control element instead of the icon button. (PC/Tablet only.)
Additional icons	Shows different icons, depending on the current value. For each new icon, define a minimum and a maximum value. In operation, if the object value does not fall within the range of any of the additional icons, the default icon is displayed.

10.7.4 Links

Navigation links between the visualization pages are automatically created and can be used without any additional configuration work. This is done in the **Vis. structure** tab, where plans must always be linked to a level or a sub-level. All pages can be accessed via the sidebar on the left of the visualization page.

In addition, *Links* can be added to the visualization map. Use an icon, text or transparent surface as a link to other pages. To configure a link, open the **Link** tab of the **Plan editor**.

Parameter

Plan editor with activated **Link** tab

The screenshot shows the 'Plan editor' window with the 'Link' tab selected. The configuration options are as follows:

- Link to:** Start page (dropdown menu)
- Custom name:** (empty text field)
- Hide in Smartphone:**
- Hide background:**
- Display mode:** Icon (dropdown menu)
- Icon:** (empty dropdown menu)
- Active state icon:** (empty dropdown menu with a close button 'x')

Table 54: 'Link to' options

Start page	The start page of the visualization.
Name of plan	A plan created in the Vis Structure tab.
Trend logs	Default visualization pages (has to be configured).
Scheduler	Default visualization pages (has to be configured).
Emergency and exit lights	Default visualization pages (has to be configured).
External link	Opens a web page (http://...). Can be used to view one trend. Copy the trend path via the Direct link button on the Trend log tab. See the next screen shot (Direct link).
Next plan	Navigation link to the next plan.
Previous plan	Navigation link to the previous plan.

When configuring an external link to a trend log, it is possible to link to a trend log in the same Controller or another one. When linking to another Controller, tick the *Include IP/host* option in the Direct link window to display the complete IP address. See *Trend logs* on page 133.

The screenshot shows the 'Direct link' configuration window with the following settings:

- Trend log:** Voltage NAC (dropdown menu)
- View mode:** Day (dropdown menu)
- Multiple trends:**
- Link:** http://192.168.0.100/scada-vis/trends?id=1&mode=day (text field)
- Include IP / host:**

Custom name

If setting Display mode to *Value* (see *Display mode* below), the custom name is displayed as the link.

Hide background

The background of the icon is not shown.



To create a transparent area for a link, select an empty SVG file for the icon and then hide the icon background.

Display mode

Icon	An icon is used as the link.
Value	The text of the <i>Custom name</i> parameter is used as the link.

Active state icon

Set another image to display in the icon when the linked page is opened. For example, create both grey (standard) and yellow (active) versions of an icon image and then assign the grey image to *Icon* and the yellow image to *Active state icon*.

Examples

Link with icons

In this example, when a plan is opened either by the link icon or by the sidebar menu, the active state icon for the link is shown in green colour and the other icons are shown in grey colour. Three link icons are placed on a layout associated with the three plans.

Display mode	Icon
Icon	Icon with grey colour
Active state icon	Icon with green colour

Link with text

In this example, a user can click on some text to open a plan. Three link texts are placed on a plan with three rooms.

Custom name	Text (e.g. Main Office)
Display mode	Value (= Custom name)
Font size/color	As required

Link as transparent area

In this example, the user can click transparent links that are positioned over rooms on part of a building plan. Empty SVG files can be used as icons (see *Hide background* on page 164).

Display mode	Icon
Icon	Empty SVG file
Hide background	Activated (makes icon with empty.svg transparent)

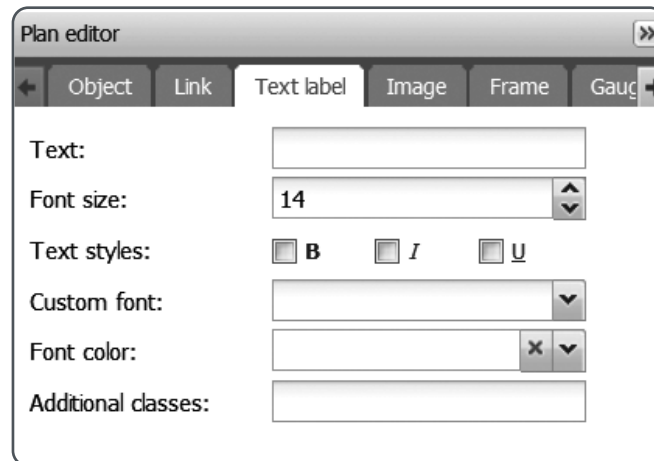
10.7.5 Text label

A *Text label* is a static element. Add text labels and position them on the visualization map. Open the **Link** tab of the *Plan editor* to edit a text label.

Text labels are only visible in the *PC/Tablet Visualization*.

Parameters

Plan editor with activated *Text label* tab



The screenshot shows the 'Plan editor' dialog box with the 'Text label' tab selected. The dialog has a title bar with a close button and a scroll button. Below the title bar are tabs for 'Object', 'Link', 'Text label', 'Image', 'Frame', and 'Gaug'. The 'Text label' tab is active. The form contains the following fields:

- Text:** A text input field.
- Font size:** A numeric input field with the value '14' and up/down arrows.
- Text styles:** Three checkboxes for 'B' (Bold), 'I' (Italic), and 'U' (Underline).
- Custom font:** A dropdown menu.
- Font color:** A color selection field with a small 'x' icon and a dropdown arrow.
- Additional classes:** A text input field.

Set the *Font size*, *Text Style*, *Font* and the *Font Color*.

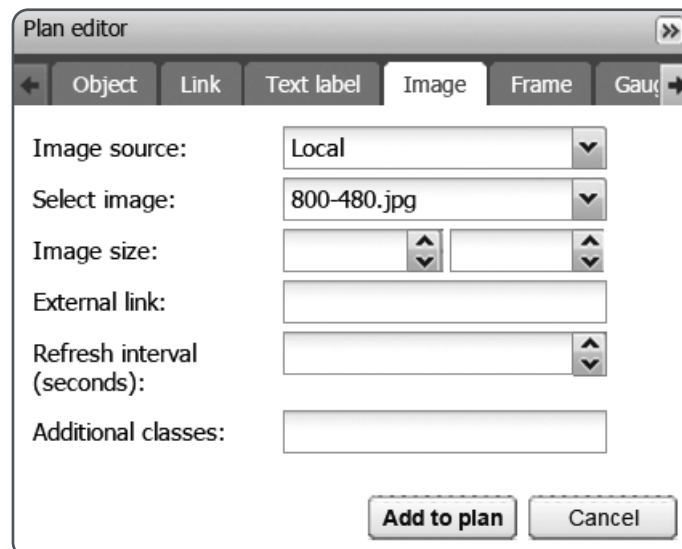
10.7.6 Image

Images can be positioned and resized on the visualization map. Use *local static images stored in the Vis. graphics tab*, or *remote web pages (e.g. a URL with dynamic content)*. Open the *Image* tab of the *Plan editor* to configure an image.

Images are only viable in the *PC/Tablet Visualization* view.

Parameters

Plan editor with activated *Image* tab



The screenshot shows the 'Plan editor' dialog box with the 'Image' tab selected. The dialog has a title bar with a close button and a scroll button. Below the title bar are tabs for 'Object', 'Link', 'Text label', 'Image', 'Frame', and 'Gaug'. The 'Image' tab is active. The form contains the following fields:

- Image source:** A dropdown menu with 'Local' selected.
- Select image:** A dropdown menu with '800-480.jpg' selected.
- Image size:** Two numeric input fields with up/down arrows.
- External link:** A text input field.
- Refresh interval (seconds):** A numeric input field with up/down arrows.
- Additional classes:** A text input field.

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: 'Add to plan' and 'Cancel'.

Image source


Local

Select an image previously added to *Vis graphics* → *Images / Backgrounds*.

Remote

Select the source URL of the image (<http://...>) This option is useful for example to grab dynamic weather forecast images.

Image size

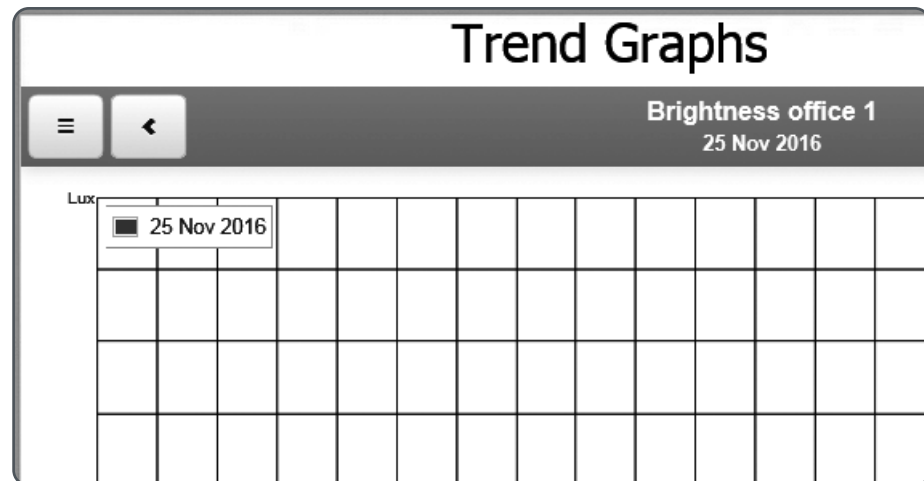
- After the image has been added to the plan, resize it directly on the visualization map by dragging either the nodes on the borders (stretch) or the nodes on the corners (keep ratio).
- It is possible to specify the image size by entering numbers.
- Restore the image to its original size by clicking the **Restore** button  on the bottom of the **Image** tab.

External link (optional)

Enter a URL to open an external web page when the image is clicked/pressed.

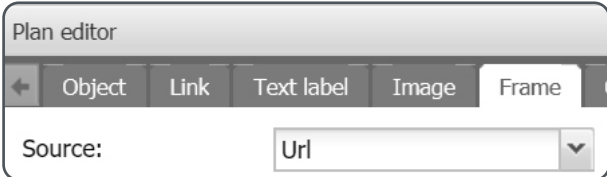
10.7.7 Frame

Use a frame to display internal or external web pages in the visualization. *Schedulers* and *Trend logs* can be shown in a frame on a visualization page. To configure a frame, open the **Frame** tab of the **Plan editor**.



Parameters

Plan editor with activated **Frame** tab



- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Source | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• URL = http://...• Scheduler• Trend logs• Emergency and exit lights |
| Frame size | The width and height of the frame |
| Refresh interval | The rate at which element values are updated. The refresh interval options are 0, or a setting between 1 s and 3600 s. |



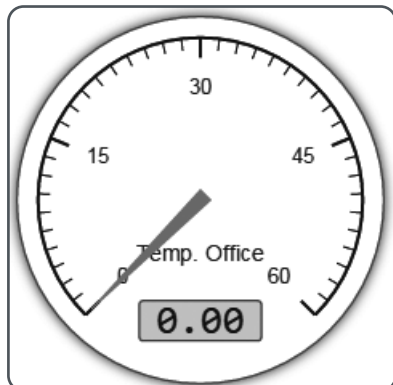
- Frames do not display well in *Smartphone Visualization* view and will be hidden in this visualization.
- Stretch the frame to maximum width if *Scheduler* or *Trend* is used. The recommended minimum width is 1024.
- Not all web pages work correctly in frames. Test external web pages within frames using the *PC/Tablet Visualization* view.

10.7.8 Gauge

Use a gauge to display values. The gauge is typically used to display measured values such as temperature, brightness or energy.

A gauge is only visible in *PC/Tablet Visualization* view.

To configure a gauge, open the **Gauge** tab of the *Plan editor*.



Parameters

Plan editor with activated **Gauge** tab

Plan editor

← label Image Frame **Gauge** Camera Gra

Data object: [dropdown menu]

Visualization parameters [button]

Gauge size: 200 [spinners]

Custom name: [text input]

Read-only:

Data object Select a C-Bus object. A typical application is measurement (228).

Gauge size Minimum size is 100, maximum size is 500.

Custom name The name to display in the gauge (e.g. *Temp. office*).

Read only **Enabled:** The value is displayed but cannot be changed.

Disabled: The value can be changed by clicking/pressing the gauge.

Visualization parameters Click the **Visualization parameter** button to open the visualization parameters (see *Objects* on page 156).

Define *Global Parameters* for an object or *Local parameters* for an element. (The local parameters are only applied to the configured gauge.)

10.7.9 Camera

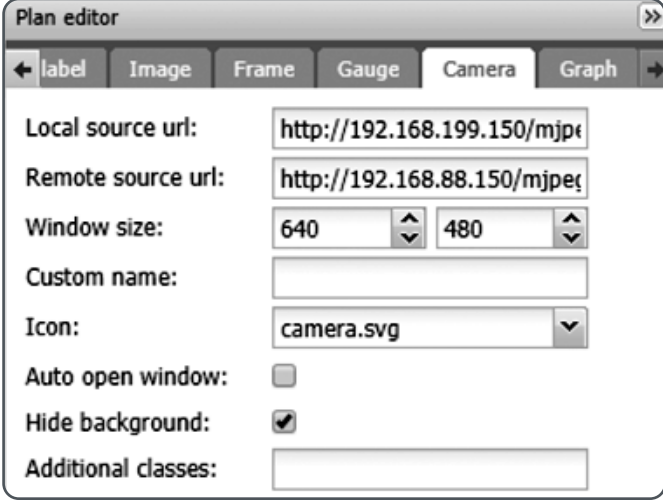
The video stream of an IP camera can be displayed on a visualization page.



- Only cameras which support HTTP MJPEG streaming in a web browser can be visualized. The Controller redirects the stream from the camera to the browser.
- A remote camera stream is displayed when the client IP is from a different sub-network than the server.
- If using **Smartphone Visualization**, check the plan in this view and adapt window size.

Parameters

Plan editor with activated *Camera* tab



The screenshot shows the 'Plan editor' window with the 'Camera' tab selected. The configuration fields are as follows:

- Local source url:
- Remote source url:
- Window size: Width Height
- Custom name:
- Icon:
- Auto open window:
- Hide background:
- Additional classes:

Local source URL	The source address of the local video stream available on the same sub-network.
Remote source URL	The source address of the remote video stream. The remote camera stream is displayed when the client IP is from a different sub-network than the server.
Window size	The width and height of the camera view window.
Custom name	A unique name for the camera view.
Auto open window	Select this option to open the camera view automatically when the <i>Plan</i> opens.
Hide background	Make the background of the icon transparent.
Additional classes	Specify additional classes, which can be added to a custom CSS file to modify a particular group of graphical objects.



If the IP camera requires a user name and password, input the URL in the following format:

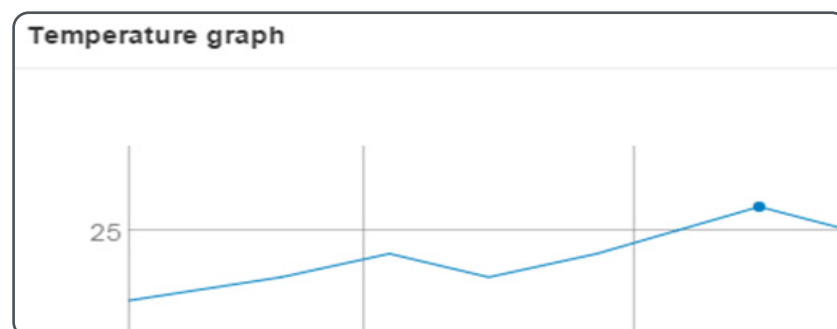
`http://USER:PASSWORD@IP`

10.7.10 Graph

A graph shows current and previous monitored values in the *PC/Tablet Visualization* view, e.g. logged temperature values. To configure a graph, open the *Graph* tab of the *Plan editor*.

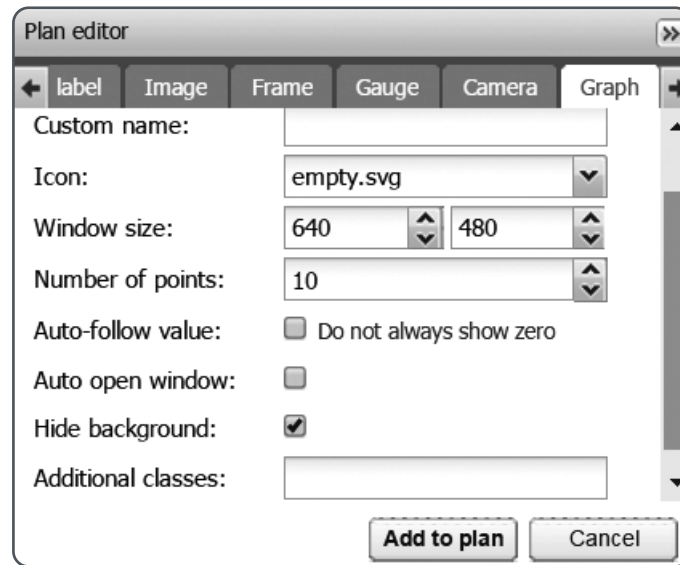


Logging must be enabled on the *Objects* tab for the application being used.



Parameters

Plan editor with activated **Graph** tab



Plan editor

label Image Frame Gauge Camera Graph

Custom name:

Icon: empty.svg

Window size: 640 480

Number of points: 10

Auto-follow value: Do not always show zero

Auto open window:

Hide background:

Additional classes:

Add to plan Cancel

Data object	Select an object. A typical application is measurement (228).
Custom name	The name which is displayed as the graph title (e.g. <i>Temperature graph</i>).
Icon	Select an icon for the button that opens the graph.
Window size	The width and height of the graph.
Number of points	Number of data points to show in the graph (5-200).
Auto open window	Select this option to open the graph window automatically when the plan opens.
Auto-follow value	Select this option to improve graph resolution for objects which never reach zero value (e.g. CO ₂ level).
Hide background	Select this option to make the background of the icon transparent.

Graphs are not visible in the *Smartphone Visualization* view.

Use a gauge to show an actual measured value (see *Gauge* on page 167 and *Links* on page 163) and then configure the gauge to open the graph when clicked. To set this up, do the following:

- ① Create and save an empty SVG file.
- ② Add the empty SVG file to the **Images/Backgrounds** tab in the **Vis. graphics** tabs.
- ③ Select the empty SVG file as *Icon* (Parameter of the Graph).
- ④ Activate the check box *Hide background* (Parameter of the Graph).
- ⑤ Click the **Add to plan** button to get the icon on the *Visualization map* (Parameter of the Graph).
- ⑥ Position the icon (empty SVG) over the gauge and adapt the size of the icon to the gauge (*Visualization map*).

11 Scripting

A script is a small, non-compiled program, written in the scripting language LUA. LUA is a general scripting language used in many products/computers. A reference manual is available for purchase at www.lua.org

Scripting can be used for wide ranging of functions. Examples of commands are:

- If-elseif-else-then
- While
- Repeat and for loops
- Math functions
- Compare functions
- Logic functions
- I/O functions.

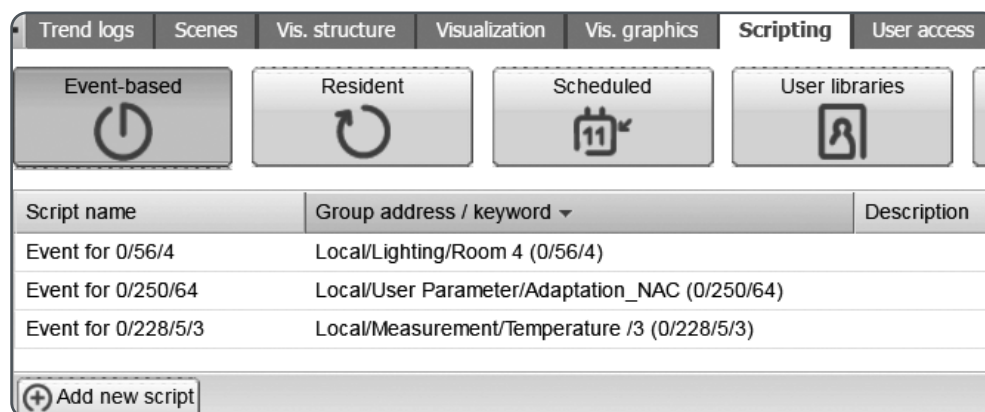
LUA can also be used for special functions, such as:

- Calculate sunrise/sunset
- Send e-mail
- Control of RS-232
- Control of Modbus.

Logic functions that can an be created with C-Bus products can also be created with LUA scripts.

11.1 Prepare a script

When creating a new script, first decide how the script will be triggered (started). Then choose a script type in the **Scripting** tab.



The following script types are available:

- Event-based scripts:
 - Scripts are triggered when the associated *Objects* are updated. The composed *Group Address* of an application or a *Keyword* can be used. With a keyword, a script can be updated by all objects assigned to the keyword.
 - Event-based scripts are the most commonly used.
- Resident scripts are triggered according to specified cycle time in seconds (0-60 s).
- Scheduled scripts:
 - Scripts are triggered according to specified time and/or date.
 - Scripts can be triggered by the specific minute, hour, day of the week, day of the month and month of the year.
 - Scripts can be triggered more frequently, such as every x minutes/hours/days.
- Start up scripts are triggered every time the system starts (power up, reboot or hardware reset).

Steps to prepare a script

- ① Open the **Scripting** tab. (Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting**)
- ② Select the type of script with one of the following buttons:
 - **Event-based**
 - **Resident**
 - **Scheduled**
 - **Start-up (init) script**.
- ③ Press the **Add new script** button at the bottom of the **Scripting** list, edit the parameters and save. A new line in the in scripting list is displayed.
- ④ Start editing the script. Click the icon in the **Editor** column of the scripting list.



If the script editor is already open, event-based scripts can also be opened from the **Objects** list.

11.1.1 Event-based scripts

Event-based scripts are triggered when the associated **Objects** are updated. The composed **Group Address** of an application (see *Add new objects* on page 47) or a **Keyword** can be used. See *Additional parameters for all applications* on page 107.

Click the **Event-based** button and set the following parameters.

Table 55: Event-based script parameters

Script name	The name to display in the scripting list.
Group address/ keyword	<i>Group addresses</i> or <i>Keywords</i> can be entered manually or selected from the drop-down list. All composed <i>Group addresses</i> from the Objects list are displayed. <i>Keywords</i> already assigned to the objects are also displayed.
Active	When <i>Active</i> is selected, the script is enabled. Otherwise, the script is disabled. This parameter can also be set from the scripting list.
Category	An optional name that can be used to group scripts in the Scripting list and the <i>Print script listing</i> (Scripting tab → Tools button).
Description	Optional.

To edit the new script, click the corresponding icon in the **Editor** column of the scripting list.

11.1.2 Resident scripts

Resident scripts are triggered according to a specified cycle time in seconds (0–60 s). Click the **Resident** button and set the following parameters.

Table 56: Resident script parameters

Script name	The name to display in the scripting list.
Sleep interval (seconds)*	Interval (0–60 s) after which the script will be executed.
Active	When <i>Active</i> is selected, the script is enabled. Otherwise, the script is disabled. This parameter can also be set from the scripting list.
Category	An optional name that can be used to group scripts in the Scripting list and the <i>Print script listing</i> (Scripting tab → Tools button).
Description	Optional.

To edit the new script in the list press the script icon in the **Editor** column.



* Avoid using a short sleep interval, especially 0. Resident scripts with sleep interval 0 have a high impact on the CPU load.

11.1.3 Scheduled scripts

Click the **Scheduled** button and set the following parameters.

Table 57: Scheduled script parameters

Script name	The name to display in the scripting list.												
Minute/Hour/Day of the month	Uses the cron format for date/time parameters. Lookup <i>Help</i> for more information about the date/time format. Example values for minutes: <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Value</th><th>Execute</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>*</td><td>Every minute</td></tr><tr><td>*/20</td><td>Every 20 minutes</td></tr><tr><td>20</td><td>When the minute is 20</td></tr><tr><td>1-10</td><td>Every minute from 1 to 10 (inclusive)</td></tr><tr><td>15,50-51</td><td>When the minute is 15, 50 and 51.</td></tr></tbody></table>	Value	Execute	*	Every minute	*/20	Every 20 minutes	20	When the minute is 20	1-10	Every minute from 1 to 10 (inclusive)	15,50-51	When the minute is 15, 50 and 51.
Value	Execute												
*	Every minute												
*/20	Every 20 minutes												
20	When the minute is 20												
1-10	Every minute from 1 to 10 (inclusive)												
15,50-51	When the minute is 15, 50 and 51.												
Month of the year	(Optional) Select the check box if required.												
Day of the week	(Optional) Select the check box if required.												
Active	When <i>Active</i> is selected, the script is enabled. Otherwise, the script is disabled. This parameter can also be set from the scripting list.												
Category	An optional name that can be used to group scripts in the Scripting list and the <i>Print script listing</i> (Scripting tab → Tools button).												
Description	Optional.												

To edit the new script in the list press the script icon in the **Editor** column.

11.1.4 Start up script

The start up script runs each time the system starts (e.g. power up, reboot or hardware reset). There are no parameters to edit for the start up script.

Click the **Start up (init) script** button to open the script editor.



If the script editor is already open, open the start up script for editing via the **Scripts** tab on the left side of the editor.

Example

In this example, the start up script is configured to wait for C-Bus to come online and then switch a floor light on at full brightness (level 255) immediately after the system starts (or is restarted). The composed group address of the light is: (0/56/3).

```
1 -- init script (comment)
2 WaitForCBusStatus (nil)
3 SetCBusLevel(0, 56, 3, 255, 0)
```

Backup and restore

Backup and restore the start up script (see *Backup and restore libraries* on page 179).

Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **User libraries** button.

11.2 Script editor

Existing event-based, resident and scheduled scripts are located in the corresponding **Script** list (see *Prepare a script* on page 170). Click the corresponding **Script icon** in the list to open the script editor. The editor opens directly when the *Start-up (init)* script button is pressed.

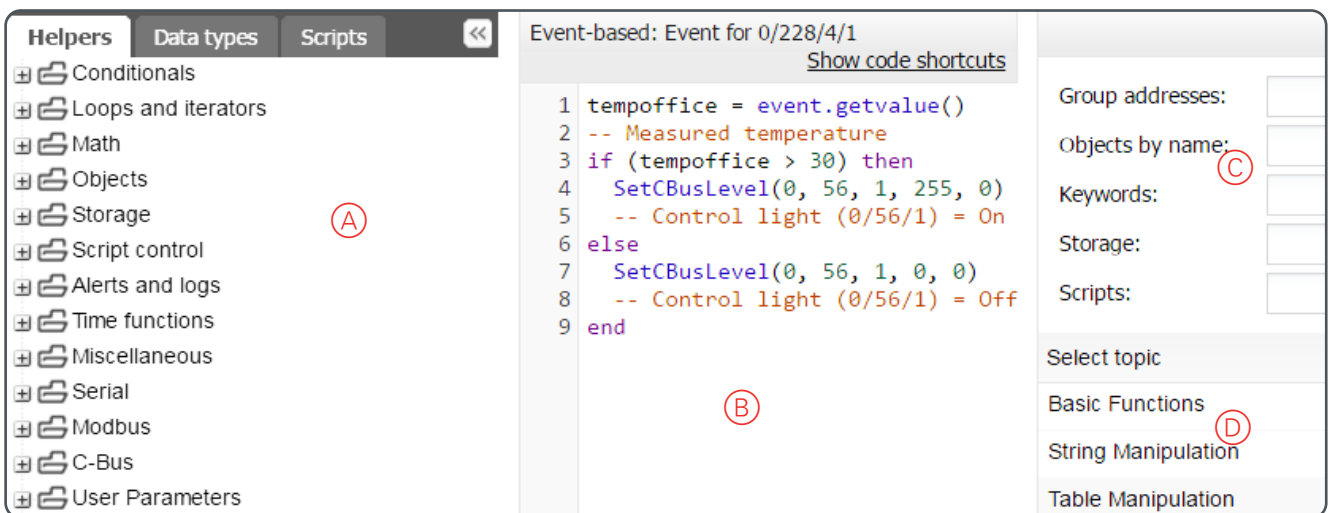
Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **Event-based, Resident** or **Scheduled** key → **Script** list.

Event-based scripts also open when the *script icon* is clicked in the **Event script** column of the **Objects** list.

11.2.1 Editor

The editor panel is displayed in the center of the script editor (see ⑥ in the next screen shot). Here, type script commands in line by line. The left and right panels of the script editor display features to support script editing.

The following screen shot shows the editor with the short event-based script.



- ① Helpers: code snippets (including comments for help, copying to editor is possible)
- ② Editor
- ③ Lists: objects, storage values and scripts (copying to editor is possible)
- ④ Select topic: code and help information (copying of code to editor is possible).

This event-based script is triggered when a temperature value is sent. The script causes a control light to be switched on when the measured temperature is higher than 30 °C. In this script, four different functions are used.

Table 58: Event-based script functions

Line ②	Functions	Description	Helpers ①
1	<code>event.getvalue()</code>	The variable gets the temperature value of a C-Bus application, in this case a measurement application with the composed group address (0/228/4/1).	<i>Objects</i> → <i>Get event value</i>
3, 6, 9	<code>if-then-else-end</code>	Conditional function that includes actions when the condition is true and other actions when the condition is not true.	<i>Conditionals</i> → <i>If - Then - Else</i>

Line ⓑ	Functions	Description	Helpers Ⓐ
4, 7	<code>setCbus(net, app,group, value, ramp rate)</code>	Sends a level command at a given ramp rate for the network, application and group. In this example, the values 0 and 255 are sent with the composed group address (0/56/1) found on the right side of the editor Ⓒ. This composed group address (0/56/1) must be adapted to the syntax of the <i>SetCbusLevel</i> command: 0, 56, 1, x, 0	<i>C-Bus</i> → <i>Set C-bus level</i>
2,5,8	-- (2x dash)	Comment line	

In this example, the **Helpers** tab Ⓐ can be used to click a function and add it to the editor. The variable parts of the script can then be replaced. For example, in line 3 of the script, `(condition)` is replaced with `(tempoffice > 30)`.

11.2.2 Helpers

The **Helpers** tab contains predefined code snippets. Comment lines are included in the snippets to help edit the code. Click a Helper snippet to add the code to the Editor.

Table 59: *Helpers tab code snippets*

Helper	Sub-function
Conditionals	If -Then, If (AND) -Then, If (OR) - Then If - Then - Else If - Else If
Loops and Iteration	Hashtable iteration, Array iteration Numeric for loop, While loop, Repeat .. Until loop
Maths	Absolute value Ceiling, Floor Round to integer, Random value
Objects	Get event value (used for event-based scripts)
Storage	Get data from storage Save data to storage
Script Control	Enable, Disable script Get script status
Alerts and Logs	Alert, Formatted Alert, (appear in Alerts tab) Log variables (appear in Log tab)
Time functions	Delay script execution
Miscellaneous	Send an email Sunrise/sunset, Convert sunrise/sunset to readable
Serial	Communication via RS-232 or RS-485 Open connection, Close connection Write to port, Blocking read, Timeout read
Modbus	Create Modbus TCP object, Create Modbus RTU object Open Modbus TCP connection, Open Modbus RTU connection Close connection Set slave address Read ..., (single/multiple coils, discrete input, registers, input registers) Write ..., (single bit, multiple bits, single registers, multiple registers)

Helper	Sub-function
C-Bus	Convert ... tag to address (network, application, group, level) Convert ... address to tag (network, application, group, level) Convert a set of network, application, group to tags Convert a set of network, application, group to addresses Convert. ... to ... (percentage, level) Get C-Bus ..., Set C-Bus ..., (level, state, ramp rate, target level) Get C-Bus ..., Set C-Bus ..., (object by keyword, measurement value) Get lighting ..., Set lighting ..., (state, level) Get enable ..., Set enable ..., (state, level) Get trigger level, Set trigger level Set state of (C-Bus remote on, C-Bus remote on) Get C-Bus (language, unit address, status) Set ... label (C-Bus label, Unicode C-Bus label) Get scene ..., (ID, name, level, setting) Get unit parameter ..., (age, status) Wait for C-Bus status
User parameter	Get user parameter, Set user parameter
IO	Read digital ... (input, input range, input text representation) Set relay state, Get relay state Set LED mode, Set LED state, Toggle LED state

11.2.3 Lists

The right panel of the editor displays list boxes with preconfigured objects, storage values and scripts.

Table 60: Examples of preconfigured list items

List	Examples of copy	Examples of usage
Group addresses	'0/56/1'	<code>value = GetCBusState(0, 56, 1)</code>
Objects by name	'Local/Light/Kitchen'	<code>grp_number = GetCBusGroupAddress(0, 56, 'Kitchen')</code>
Keywords	'lights_office'	<code>value = GetCBusByKW({'lights_office'}, 'or')</code>
Storage	'light1_On'	<code>data = storage.get('light1_On')</code>
Scripts	'Office temp'	<code>script.enable('Office temp')</code>

11.2.4 Find and replace

To search code in a script, replace code and enter code from the topic. For each of these functions, use keyboard shortcuts. Before starting, click a line of the script in the editor to place the text cursor.

Table 61: Keyboard shortcuts for find and replace

Keys	Result	Next steps
[Ctrl] + [F]	Box for search opens Code is highlighted in yellow	Enter code and press [Enter]
[Ctrl] + [G]	Shows next highlighted code	
[Shift] + [Ctrl] + [G]	Shows previous highlighted code	
[Shift] + [Ctrl] + [F]	Box for replace opens	Enter code "replace" and press [Enter] Enter code "with" and press [Enter] Select: Yes, No, All, Stop
[Ctrl] + [Space]	List with commands and functions opens	Select in the list and press [Enter]; or Enter first letter, select in list and press [Enter]

For more help, use functions and commands from the [Helpers](#) tab or the [Select Topic](#) list (see [Editor](#) on page 173).

11.2.5 Logs for testing

Use logs for testing and debugging a script. The `log` command converts variables to human readable form and stores them. In the [Helpers](#) list, access log variables via [Alerts and logs](#) → [Log variables](#).

Function

```
log(var1, var2, var3, ...)
```

The function accepts variables of the following data types.

Table 62: Function variable data types

Type of variable	Variable	Message
Boolean	var1 =true	boolean: true
Number	var2 =255	number: 255
String	var3 = 'text'	string: text
Not found/valid	var4 not defined	nil

A table can be defined with up to 5 nested levels.

```
var1 ={f1 =var4, t2= var5, ...}
```

Example of table

```
var1 ={f1 =var4, t2= var5}
```

Example of message

```
table: [f1]: number: 25 [f2]: boolean: false
```

The logging messages are listed in the [Logs](#) tab of the [Configurator](#) page.

When editing a script, open the current logs immediately with the [Logs](#) button.

Example of a script with logging

```
Event-based: Office Temp. (Local/Measurement/Temp/1 (0/228/4/1))
1 tempoffice = event.getvalue()
2 -- Get measured temperature
3 if (tempoffice > 30) then
4   SetCbusLevel(0, 56, 1, 255, 0)
5   -- Control light (0/56/1) = On
6 else
7   SetCbusLevel(0, 56, 1, 0, 0)
8   -- Control light (0/56/1) = Off
9 end
10 -- Logging
11 -- Get level of Control light
12 Ctrl_light = GetCbusLevel('Local','Lighting','Control light')
13 log(tempoffice, Ctrl_light)
```

Example of logs opened in the script editor



Options

- Automatically scroll content when new logs appear
- Show logs only for current script
- Clear logs (button).

11.2.6 Error logs

Error logs are displayed in the **Error log** tab of the **Configurator** page. Error messages are generated by the system. Errors can be detected in scripts or in the configuration (see *Error logs* on page 40).

Example script

A lighting channel (local network/Lights 1/room 99) does not respond, e.g. the address *Room 99* does not exist in **Objects** list or **Tag map**.

```
Error log 09.02.2017 00:33:57

Library cbuslogic:143: Unable to find group tag 'Room 99'
stack traceback:
 [C]: in function 'error'
 Library cbuslogic:143: in function 'CBusLookupTags'
 Library cbuslogic:342: in function '_GetCBusLightData'
 Library cbuslogic:256: in function 'GetCBusLevel'
```

When editing a script, open error logs by clicking the **Error log** button.

11.2.7 Finish the script

Once finished editing the script, use the following buttons at the bottom bar of the script editor.



Table 63: Script editor buttons

Button	Usage
Enabled/Disabled	Enabled: script is active and can be tested Disabled: script is not active
Run	When enabled, it allows event-based scripts to run. Depending on the application, send different values to trigger the script. Lighting <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Target level• Ramp rate Measurement <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Value• Unit.
Logs	Opens current logs (see <i>Logs for testing</i> on page 176)
Error logs	Opens error logs. Error messages from scripts are displayed in the Error logs tab (see <i>Error logs</i> on page 40).
Save	Save the script.
Save and close	Save the script and close the Editor window.
Close	Close the Editor window.

11.3 User libraries

User libraries usually contain user defined functions that can be called from other scripts. To use functions defined in a user library, they must be included at the start of the script. For example, a user library with the name 'test' will be included as follows: `require('user.test')`

Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **User libraries** button.

11.3.1 Add and edit a library



Click the *Add new library* button in the bottom bar to prepare a new library.

The following parameters are available:

Auto load library	When selected, the script is loaded when the Controller starts.
Keep source	By default, this parameter is enabled. Once disabled, the code is compiled and cannot be used for further editing.

Click the **Editor** icon in the list to open the script editor. Now edit the library script in the same way as other scripts.

From the script editor, access existing user libraries via the **Scripts** tab.

11.3.2 Backup and restore libraries

Click the **Export libraries** button to backup all *User libraries*, the *Start-up (init) script* and the *Common functions*. The backup file has the following name:

```
Libraries-Hostname-jjjj.mm.dd-hh.mm.tar
```

Click the **Restore/add libraries** button to load a backup file or a file containing new libraries.



- Existing libraries with the same name as a restored or added library are overwritten.
- It is also possible to exchange files from other Controllers.

11.4 Common functions

Common functions is a library of globally used functions. They can be called from any script, any time, without special inclusions. The functions *Send an e-mail* and *Sunrise/sunset calculation* are included by default.

Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **Common functions** button.

When the script editor is open, use the **Scripts** tab in the left panel.

11.4.1 E-mail

The function *Send an e-mail* is preconfigured with this email address: `example@gmail.com`.

Use the e-mail function to send information related to an event. Examples include:

- Send an e-mail when the measured temperature is too high.
- For control, use a scheduled script.

To use the *Send an e-mail* function, perform the following checks and configuration:

- ① The Controller must be in a network with access to the Internet, e.g. access via a network router.
 - The basic network settings of the Controller are explained in the chapter (see *Change IP settings of the Ethernet interface* on page 31).
 - Check the network connection with *Network Utilities* (see page 222).
- ② An active e-mail account is mandatory together with information to connect to the SMTP server.
- ③ Insert the active e-mail account data into the **Common functions** script.
- ④ Prepare and edit an event-based script with the *Send an e-mail* function. Use a function in the **Helpers** tab: **Miscellaneous** → **Send an e-mail**.



Access via email has been tested. Be aware, however, that access configuration may be changed by email providers in the future (e.g. to enhance security standards).

Insert individual e-mail data

Edit the email function strings to include the settings for your email provider.

```

Common functions
1  -- user function library
2
3  -- send an e-mail
4  function mail(to, subject, message)
5      -- make sure these settings are correct
6      local settings = {
7          -- "from" field, only e-mail must be specified here
8          from = 'example@gmail.com',
9          -- smtp username
10         user = 'example@gmail.com',
11         -- smtp password
12         password = 'mypassword',
13         -- smtp server
14         server = 'smtp.gmail.com',
15         -- smtp server port
16         port = 465,
17         -- enable ssl, required for gmail smtp
18         secure = 'sslv23',
19     }

```

Parameter	Description	Default setting
from	Specify the sender e-mail	'example@gmail.com'
user	User name for the e-mail account used for this function	'example@gmail.com'
password	Password for the e-mail account used for this function	'mypassword'
server	SMTP server address	'smtp.gmail.com'
port	SMTP server port	465
secure	Type of secure connection	sslv23

Click the **Save** button at the bottom bar of the editor. The edited email data will be included whenever the *Send an e-mail* function in a script is used.

11.4.2 Sending an e-mail using a script

Use a function in the **Helpers** tab to include the *Send an e-mail* function in a script.

Path: **Miscellaneous** → **Send an e-mail**.

In the script, edit the following three strings (see lines 2, 3 and 4 in the following screenshot).

```

Event-based: Event for 0/56/4 (Local/Lighting/Room 4 (0/56/4))
1  -- make sure mail settings are set in user function library
2  subject = 'E-mail test'
3  message = 'Testing e-mail'
4  mail('user@example.com', subject, message)

```

Parameter	Description	Default setting
subject	Subject of message	'E-Mail text'
message	Text of message	'Testing e-mail'
Destination	Email address of the receiver	'user@example.com'

11.4.3 Backup and restore common functions

Backup and restore common functions (see *Backup and restore libraries* on page 179).

Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **User libraries** button.

11.5 Tools

The tools offer various options for the export and import of scripts.

11.5.1 Backup and restore scripts

Backup

- ① Click the **Tools** button and select **Backup scripts**.
- ② (Optional) Include *Common functions* and the *Start-up (init)* script. The backup file has the following name:

`Scripting-Hostname-jjjj.mm.dd-hh.mm.tar`

Restore

- ① Click the **Tools** button and select **Restore scripts**.
- ② (Optional) Remove or keep the existing scripts before a backup.

11.5.2 Print script listing

- ① Click the **Tools** button and select **Print script listings**.
A text page appears. The list is structured by categories (optional set).
- ② Click with right mouse button
- ③ (Optional) Select from the following options:
 - Print
 - Save as
 - Show source code.

11.5.3 Edit custom Java script

This advanced function allows insertion of Java script code.

11.5.4 Show logs window

All log data are listed here (the list is a duplicate of the **Logs** list in the **Logs** tab). Use this tool to check the logged data when testing and debugging a script. Alternatively open this list from the script editor.

11.6 Alerts

System messages or user alert information from user edited scripts are displayed in the **Alerts** tab of the **Configurator** page.

In the following example, system starts and a user edited temperature alert are shown.

Alert time	Script name	Message
09.02.2017 01:00:10	Event for 0/228/5/1	Temperature too high, 36.0 °C
08.02.2017 08:11:35	system	System start
08.02.2017 05:16:29	system	System start

11.6.1 Alert command in a script

The following command stores an alert message and the current system time in the main database:

```
alert('message', var1, var2, ...)
```

Example with alert message

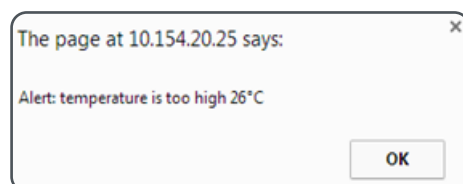
```
Event-based: Event for 0/228/5/1 (Local/Measurement/Temp_Office1/1 (0/228/5/1))  
Show code shortcuts  
1 tempval = event.getvalue()  
2 --Temperature of measurement application  
3 if (tempval > 30) then  
4   -- Control Light on  
5   SetCbusLevel(0, 56, 1, 255, 0)  
6   alert('Temperature too high, %.1f °C', tempval)  
7 else  
8   -- Control Light off  
9   SetCbusLevel(0, 56, 1, 0, 0)  
10 end
```

In this example, when a measured temperature is higher than 30 °C (e.g. 36 °C), the following message appears in the **Alert** list:

Temperature too high, 36 °C

Show alerts in PC/Tablet

By default, alerts appear in the **Alerts** tab within the configuration. They are displayed in the *PC/Tablet visualization* when enabled in the settings of the Visualization configuration (see page 143).



Show an alert as a message in PC/Tablet

The alert message can optionally be shown on a visualization page. Text and numeric values can be set to a string variable and set to *User parameter application* with data type *String (255 byte)*:

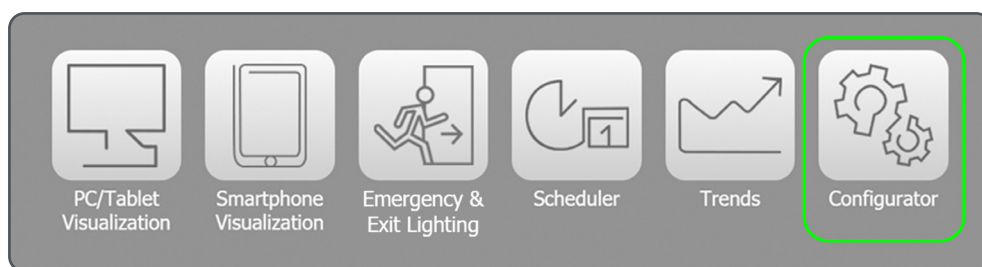
```
-- Set to variable message: string, digits of variable tempval and °C  
message =  
  'Temperature too high,'..string.format("%d",tempval)..string.  
  format("°C")  
-- Set message to user parameter (variable address: Temp_info)  
SetUserParam('Local', 'Temp_info', message).
```

The user parameter can be configured for a visualization page (see *Objects* on page 156).

12 User access

Add users with individual access rights. By default, users can access the following modules from the **Start** page:

- PC/Tablet Visualization
- Smartphone Visualization
- Emergency & Exit Lighting (5500NAC2 only)
- Scheduler
- Trends.



Access can be partially or fully given, or denied, for each module. Partial access allows individual selection of pages. Access can be given or denied for each visualization page, emergency and exit lighting group, scheduler and trend.



The Network Automation Controller is designed for a maximum of 50 users for visualization. This limit is not physical but dependent on maximum CPU load.

The Application Controller is limited to a maximum of 8 users.

User access settings provide different levels of protection:

- **Unrestricted access:** All users are given access to all pages without restrictions.
- **Common restricted access:** All users are given access to all pages via a common PIN.
- **Individual restricted access:** Access to visualization, emergency and exit lighting groups, scheduler and trend logs is controlled via individual user login and password so that access can be defined for each user.

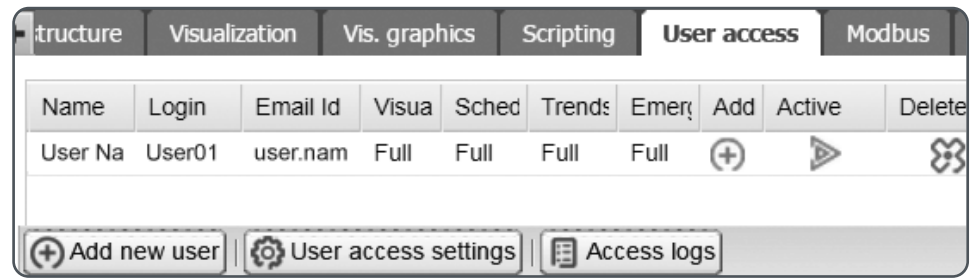
Access can be given to the **Start** page or directly to one of the modules:

- PC/Tablet Visualization
- Smartphone Visualization
- Emergency & Exit Lighting (5500NAC2 only)
- Scheduler
- Trends.

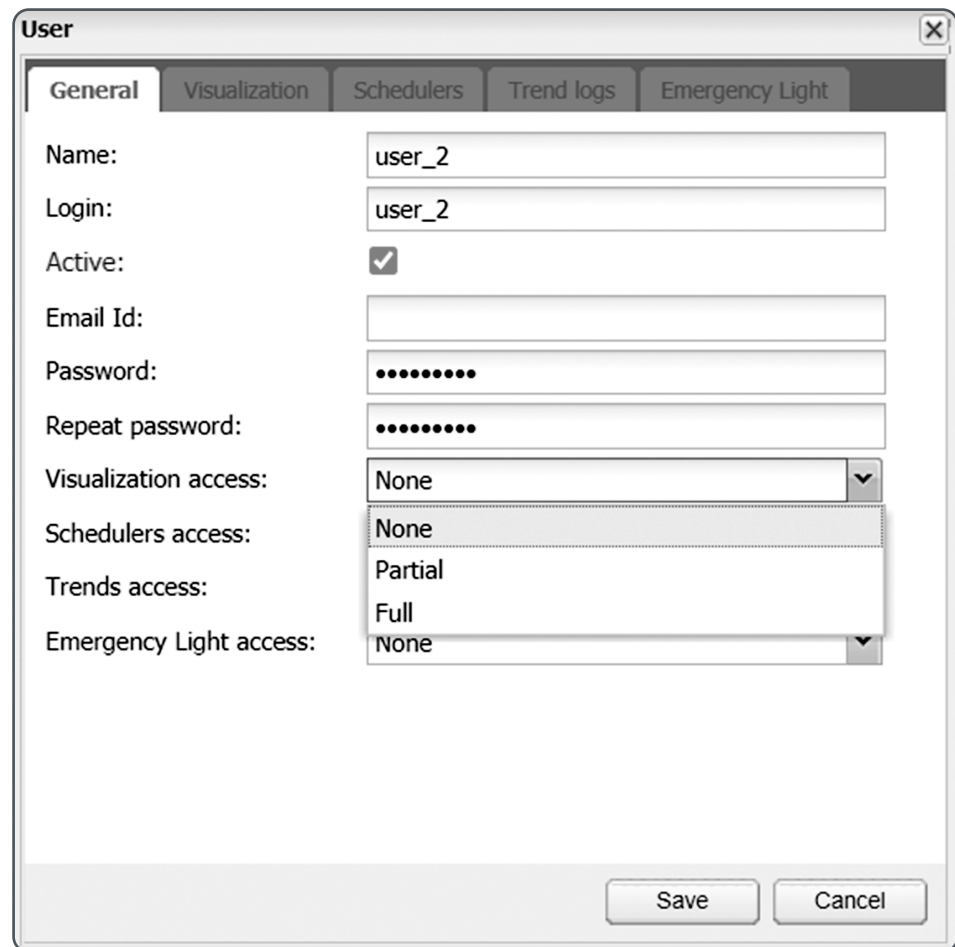
Access to the configuration is defined under *Admin access* (See *Access to the Controller* on page 29). The default address is: <http://192.168.0.10/scada-main>.

12.1 Add and edit user

To add a user, click the **Add new user** button in the **User access** tab.



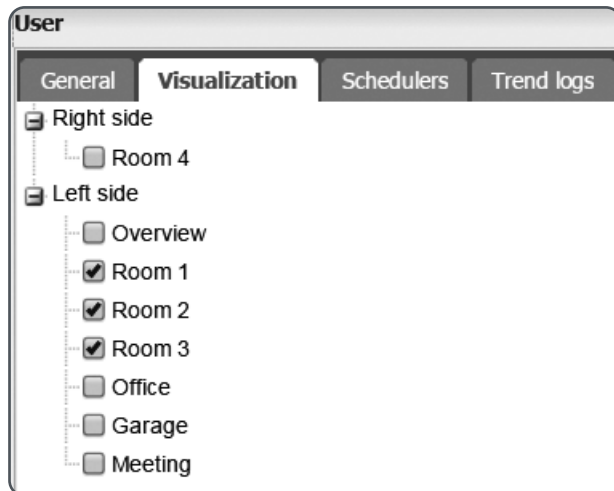
The user window is displayed:



12.2 User parameters

Table 64: User parameters

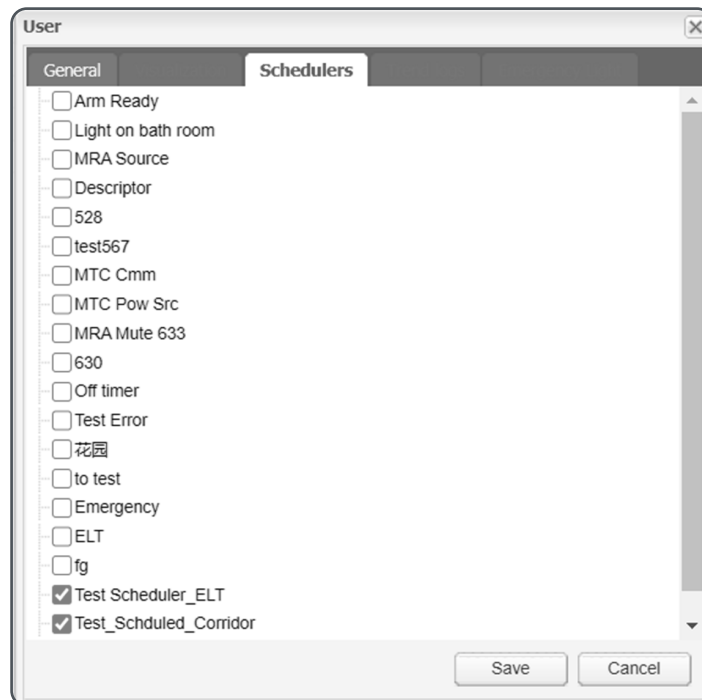
Name	User name
Login	Length 2 to 20 characters, accepted characters: -, _, a-z, A-Z, 0-9.
Active	<p>Selected: User account is active</p> <p>Unselected: User account is inactive (user cannot log in, but user account settings are retained)</p>
Password	At least 8 characters, including a minimum of 1 uppercase letter, 1 lowercase letter and 1 digit.
Visualization/ Emergency & Exit Lighting/Schedulers/ Trend access	<p>For each module, access can be partially or fully given, or denied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None • Partial • Full. <p>If partial is selected, access to visualization, emergency and exit lighting groups, scheduler and trend pages can be individually configured.</p> <p>The following example shows a configuration with access to 3 pages of the visualization for the specific user:</p>



Homepage	<p>This parameter depends on selected Default homepage in the User access Settings (see <i>User access settings</i> on page 187).</p> <p>If the Start page is selected in the user access settings, the Start page is the homepage for all users. From the Start page, the users get access to the other modules as configured.</p> <p>If another page is selected in the user access settings, an individual homepage can be selected for each user. If a user gets access to different modules, select the Start page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start page • PC/Tablet visualization • Smartphone • Emergency & Exit Lighting • Schedulers • Trend logs.
-----------------	--

12.3 Assigning schedulers to a user

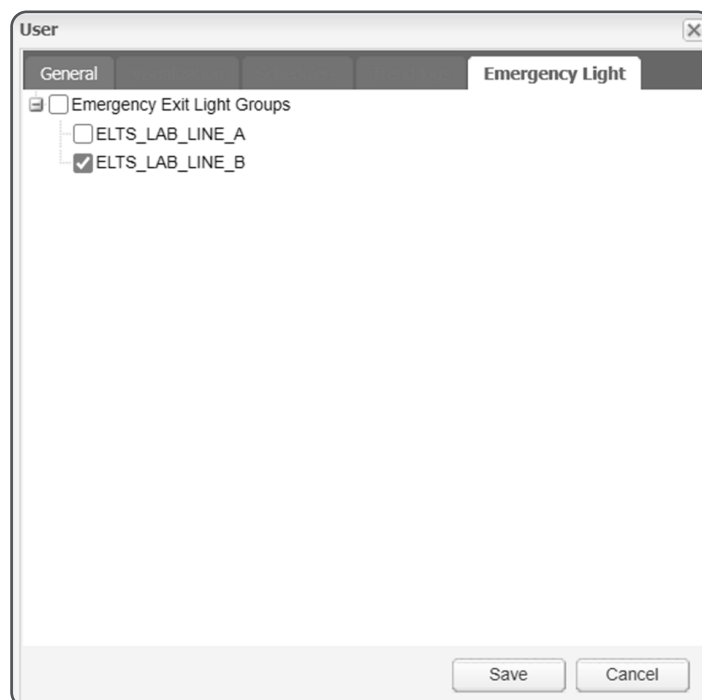
To assign a scheduler to a user, click the **Scheduler** tab.



Assign Emergency Lighting schedulers in the same way as other schedulers.

12.4 Assigning emergency lighting groups to a user

To assign an emergency lighting group to a user, click the **Emergency Lights** tab.



Select the Emergency Lighting groups to assign to the user and click **OK**.

12.5 User access settings

User access settings are applied for all users.

Click the **User access settings** button in the **User access** tab.

Table 65: User access settings

Disable password for visualization	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the password is disabled, full access to visualization, emergency and exit lighting, schedulers and trends is given to everyone. A logout is not required. The user settings are not applied (see <i>Add and edit user</i> on page 184). If the <i>Visualization PIN code</i> is set, this common code is required to access visualization, emergency and exit lighting, schedulers and trends.• If the password is enabled, a login is required and the user settings are applied (see <i>Add and edit user</i> on page 184).
Default homepage	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the <i>Default homepage</i> is set to Start page, this page is the home page for all users.• If the <i>Default homepage</i> is set to another page and a password for visualization is required, the homepage depends on the user settings (see <i>Add and edit user</i> on page 184).
Visualization PIN code	Access can be protected with a common PIN code (3 to 8 digits). The PIN code remains valid until the browser is closed.
Account active	(Tick/Untick) Enable or disable a user account. If a user no longer requires access but might need it later, the user account can be made inactive instead of deleting the account. In this way, the user account settings are retained and do not have to be re-input later.

Direct access via browser address

Table 66: Direct access browser addresses

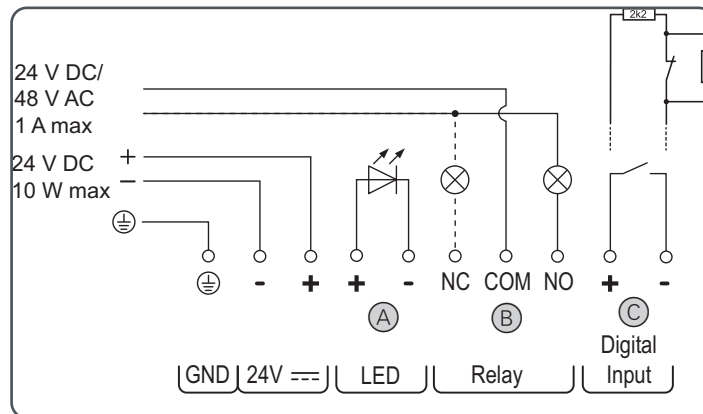
Page/Module	Address (with default IP address)
PC/Tablet Visualization	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis
Smartphone/Visualization	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis/touch
Emergency & Exit Lighting (5500NAC2)	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis/emergencyexitlight
Scheduler	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis/schedulers
Trends	http://192.168.0.10/scada-vis/trends
Start page	http://192.168.0.10/home
Configurator	http://192.168.0.10/scada-main

Direct access is also protected with the login and password.

13 Inputs and Outputs

This chapter describes the configuration of the relay output, the LED driver output and the digital input. These external interfaces can be controlled via scripts. Script commands with comments are listed in the *Helpers* tab of the script editor (see *Script editor* on page 173). The following sections include examples of possible configurations.

13.1 Technical data



- (A) LED Output driver 40 mA current limited
- (B) Relay output NO, NC, Common
48 V AC/24 V DC 1 A max.
- (C) Digital input Potential-free contact (switch/relay)
Monitored input:
 - Impedance 2.2 k Ω (closed)
 - Impedance 6.9 k Ω (open)

13.2 Configuration of relay output

The relay output can be switched on and off via C-Bus applications. A standard use case is to switch the output via a lighting application. It is also possible to configure a *250 - User Parameter*. With this application, the output can be switched via values sent from Modbus slaves or visualization pages.

Example

In this example, a *Lighting application* is described. The load is connected to the NO (normally open) contact. The sequence is as follows:

- A sensor in the local network (0) sends the levels 0 or 255 with the ramp rate 0 s.
- If the state of the relay is set to *true*, the relay is switched on:
 - The NO contact is closed
 - The NC contact is open
 - The relay LED is green.

The following script sets the relay state:

```
Event-based: Event for relay (Local/Relay/Output NO (0/58/1))
1  -- Value from the sensor
2  switchoutput = event.getvalue()
3  if (switchoutput > 0) then
4    -- Set state of the relay true: NO contact = closed
5    SetRelayState(true)
6  else
7    -- Set state of the relay false: NO contact = open
8    SetRelayState(false)
9  end
```

All commands are listed in the **Helpers** tab of the script editor:

- Conditionals: If - Then - Else
- I/O: Set relay state.

Optionally, the relay can be switched from a visualization page. This can be configured via an *Object* element using the group address *Local/Relay/Output NO* (see *Objects* on page 156).

13.2.1 Commands in the Helpers tab

In the **Helpers** tab of the script editor, find an **I/O** command.

Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **Event-based** button → **Editor** icon in the **Script** list.

Set relay state

```
-- Set state of the relay to on
SetRelayState(true)
```

If the value of the variable is set to *true*, the NO contact is closed.

Get relay state

```
-- Get state of the relay
value = GetRelayState()
```

If the NO contact is closed, the variable returns *true*.

The returned value of the relay state can also be used to switch an LED on or off.

13.3 Configuration of LED output

The LED output can be switched on and off via C-Bus applications. A common use case is to switch the LED via a lighting application. It is also possible to configure a *250 - User Parameter*. With this application, a LED can be switched via values sent from Modbus slaves or visualization pages.

Example with on and off

The LED output can be configured in a similar way to the relay output (see *Configuration of relay output* on page 188). Using an event-based script, the LED can be switched on and off.

On command

```
SetLEDState(true)
```

Off command

```
SetLEDState(false)
```

Example with LED flashing on/off

In this example, the LED flashes on/off when the temperature is higher than 30 °C. The minimal cycle (flashing) time is 1 s. The sequence is as follows:

- The temperature can be measured by a temperature sensor of a C-Bus device and sent by the application *228 - Measurement*.
- A resident script can be used to evaluate the measured temperature.
- If the temperature is above a specified value, the LED state toggles (on/off). For example, the *Toggle LED state* command can be triggered with a sleep interval (e.g. 1 s).
- If the temperature is lower than the specified value, the LED switches off.

The following script sets the LED to on/off flashing or to permanent off state:

```
Resident: Temp room_2 > 30 = flashing LED
1 -- Get temperature from measurement: temp_room_2 (float)
2 -- Tag name of device ID: 'Sensor_room 2' Channel: 1
3 -- Tag name of network: 'Local'
4 temp_room2 = GetCbusMeasurement('Local', 'Sensor room 2', 1)
5 -- LED flashes, when temperature is > 30 °C (1 s on / 1 s off)
6 if temp_room2 > 30 then
7   -- Toggle LED state every second (time of resident script)
8   ToggleLEDState()
9 else
10  -- Switch LED Off
11  SetLEDState(false)
12 end
```

All commands are listed in the *Helpers* tab of the script editor:

- C-Bus: Get C-Bus measurement value
- Conditionals: If - Then - Else
- I/O: Toggle LED state
- I/O: Set LED state.

A high temperature event can also be shown in the alerts list (see *Alerts* on page 181).

13.3.1 Commands in the Helpers tab

In the *Helpers* tab of the script editor, find an *I/O* command.

Path: *Configurator* → *Scripting* tab → *Event-based* button → *Editor* icon in the *Script* list.

Set LED state

```
-- Set state of LED on
SetLEDState(true)
```

If the value of the variable is set to *true*, the LED is switched on.

Get LED state

```
-- Get state of LED
value = GetLEDState()
```

If the LED is switched on, the variable returns *true*.

Toggle LED state

```
-- Toggle state of LED
ToggleLEDState()
```

If the command is executed, the LED output toggles from the current state to the opposite state (e.g. from *off* to *on*).

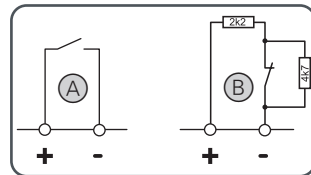
Set LED mode

```
-- Set mode of LED to 'normal'
SetLEDMode('normal')
```

No other modes can be set.

13.4 Reading of digital input

The digital input of the Controller is compatible with either a potential-free contact or a monitored cable using End of Line Resistance.



- Ⓐ Digital input with potential free contact
- Ⓑ Digital input with monitored cable

13.4.1 States of potential free contact

Table 67: States of potential free contact

LED Controller	Potential free contact (switch/relay)	Text representation script
Yellow	Input is open circuit	open
Red	Input is closed circuit	short

13.4.2 States of monitored input

Table 68: States of monitored input

LED Controller	Monitored input	Text representation script
Green	Input in high resistance (6.9 kΩ) Switch open state	alarm
Yellow	Open circuit (> 12 kΩ)	open
Red	Short circuit (< 1 kΩ)	short
Off	Input in low resistance (2.2 kΩ) Switch closed state	ok

Example

In this example, text messages are used to show if a potential free window contact is open or closed. The sequence is as follows:

- The state of the digital input is repeatedly read and evaluated in a resident script.
- A variable is set to “Window open” or “Window closed”, and then set to a 250 - *User parameter* application with the data type *string*.

- The characters of the user parameter can be shown on a visualization page. The user parameter can also be configured as an *Object* element (see *Objects* on page 156).

The following script can be used to set a text message as “Window open” or “Window closed” depending on the contact state.

```

Resident: Digital input open closed
1  -- Read state of digital input (resistance below 3.5 kΩ = true)
2  digital_input = ReadDigitalInput()
3  -- It is controlled, if the contact is closed or open
4  if digital_input == true then
5  -- Set a string to the visualisation_message
6  visualisation_message = 'Window is closed'
7  else
8  visualisation_message = 'Window is open'
9  -- Set a string to the visualisation_message
10 end
11 -- Set the visualisation message to User Parameter 250
12 -- User parameter: 'Status window' (Data type: String (255 bytes))
13 -- Tag name of network: 'Local'
14 SetUserParam('Local', 'Status window', visualisation_message

```

All commands are listed in the *Helpers* tab of the script editor:

- I/O: Read digital input
- Conditionals: If - Then - Else
- C-Bus: Set user parameter
- I/O: Set LED state.

Commands in the Helpers tab

In the *Helpers* tab of the script editor, find an *I/O* command.

Path: *Configurator* → *Scripting* tab → *Event-based* button → *Editor* icon in the *Script* list.

Read digital input

```
-- Read state of digital input
value = ReadDigitalInput()
```

If the resistance is below 3.5 kΩ, the variable returns *true*.

Read digital input range

```
-- Read range of digital input
value = ReadDigitalInputRng()
```

If the resistance is between 1 kΩ, and 12 kΩ, the variable returns *true*.

Read digital input text representation

```
-- Read text representation of digital input state
value = ReadDigitalInputTxt()
```

The following strings are returned.

Table 69: Digital input strings and LED indications

Value	Resistance	LED Controller
alarm	Input in high resistance (6.9 kΩ) Switch open state	Green
open	Open circuit (> 12 kΩ)	Yellow
short	Short circuit (< 1 kΩ)	Red
ok	Input in low resistance (2.2 kΩ) Switch closed state	Off

13.5 USB-A

A USB type A connector on the Controller provides connection to USB expansion devices.

- USB 1.1 and 2.0 devices are supported.
- FAT and FAT32 file system formatted flash drives can be attached.
- USB 2.0 provides a bandwidth of 480 Mbit/s, corresponding to an effective image data rate of 40 MB/s.
- Devices complying with the USB specification may consume a total of 500 mA from the bus. Devices with a power rating of up to 2.5 W can therefore be supplied via the bus.
- Data transmission is possible in both directions.

13.5.1 USB flash drive configuration commands

Commands are listed in the *Input and Output Facilities* topic list of the script editor.

Path: *Configurator* → *Scripting* tab → *Event-based* button → *Editor* icon in the *Script* list.

13.5.2 Mounting

Before a drive is read from or written to it must be mounted and when your script is done it will unmount it, doing so reduces the chance of data loss if the power fails.

The following script functions will perform this task:

```
function mount_usb(check)
  devs = io.ls('/sys/class/block/')
  table.sort(devs)
  for _, dev in ipairs(devs) do
    if dev:match('^sd%a%d$') then
      part = dev
      break
    elseif not devn and dev:match('^sd%a$') then
      devn = dev
    end
  end
  end

  part = part or devn
  if part then
    os.execute('umount -f /mnt 2>&-')
    if check then
      io.readproc('fsck.fat -a /dev/' .. part)
    end
    res, stat = io.readproc('mount /dev/' .. part .. ' /mnt 2>&1')
    if stat == 0 then
      return true
    else
      return false, 'USB mount failed: ' .. tostring(res)
    end
  else
    return false, 'No valid USB devices found'
  end
end

function unmount_usb()
  os.execute('umount -f /mnt 2>&-')
end
```

Incorporate this into your script (or have it as a user library) when accessing the drive call 'mount_usb' from your script. When the function is successful it will mount the drive under the '/mnt' directory. It takes an optional boolean argument, if it is true then it will check the file system before mounting, it defaults to off as it takes several seconds to run.



- Note that only the first partition on the drive will be mounted.
- Also note that while it is possible to connect multiple USB drives via a hub the above script will only mount the first it detects. It is possible to extend it to properly handle more but that is beyond the scope of this document



The LUA reference manual available at www.lua.org provides further information.

Additionally other file systems are supported such as EXT2/3/4, these have fewer intrinsic limits than FAT but require extra software to read on Microsoft Windows or MacOS X.

Read

```
io.readfile(file)
```

Function to read the entire contents of 'file' and return it as a string. Returns nil if there is an error.

Write

```
io.writefile(file, data)
```

Function that saves 'data' to 'file' and overwrites any existing content. 'data' is a value converted to a string. The function returns a true when the file can be opened for writing, or nil when the file cannot be accessed.

Open

```
io.open(file, mode)
```

The open command is a lower level function, which opens 'file' for IO and returns a file handle. The 'mode' can be one of the following:

- “r” Open the file read-only.
- “w” Open the file write-only and truncate any existing data.
- “a” Open the file write-only and append to the end of the file.
- “r+” Open the file read/write, fails if the file doesn't exist.
- “w+” Open the file read/write and truncate any existing data.
- “a+” Open the file read/write and append to the end of the file.

Returns the file handle on success, returns nil and an error on failure.

The file will be closed when no longer required. Further information can be found in the Lua reference manual.

Example 1

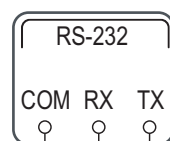
```
-- Update the file '/mnt/data' with a value,  
-- replacing any contents with the string 'abcdef' and a new line.  
-- Emits an alert if the flash drive is not accessible.  
res, err = mount_usb()  
  
if res then  
  io.writefile('/mnt/data', 'abcdef\n')  
  unmount_usb()  
else  
  alert(err)  
end
```

Example 2

```
-- Append 'abcdef' and a new line to the file '/mnt/data'  
-- Emits an alert if the flash drive is not accessible.  
-- Note that the maximum size of a file in FAT/FAT32 is 4Gbyte.  
res, err = mount_usb()  
if res then  
  f, err = io.open('/mnt/data', 'a')  
  if f ~= nil then  
    f:write('abcdef\n')  
    f:close()  
  else  
    alert('Unable to write to file: ' .. err) end  
  unmount_usb()  
else  
  alert(err)  
end
```

13.6 RS-232

Interaction with other equipment is possible via an isolated RS-232 interface. The RS-232 serial interface is one of the most widely used communication standards for data transmission between two devices over short distances.



COM = Common RX = Receive TX = Transmit

Typical not guaranteed data transmission with different cable lengths:

Table 70: Typical RS-232 baud rates for different cable lengths

Baud rate (bit/s)	Max. cable length (m)
2400	60
4800	30
9600	15
19200	7.6
38400	3.7
57600	2.6
11500	1.5
230400	1.0

The achievable error free baud rate depends on the specific hardware, cable length, cable type and quality, electromagnetic noise and other factors.



Note the wiring and configuration instructions in the manuals of the connected RS-232 equipment.

13.6.1 Configuration commands

Commands for the data transfer between the Controller and another device using RS-232 are described in the following script.

Serial commands are listed in the **Helpers** tab of the script editor.

Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **Event-based** button → **Editor** icon in the **Script** list.

Open connection

```
require('serial')
-- communication example with 38400 bit/s
port = serial.open('/dev/RS232', {
  baudrate = 38400,
  databits = 8,
  stopbits = 1,
  parity = 'none',
  duplex = 'half'
})
```

Table 71: RS-232 open connection settings

Settings	Values
Baud rate	300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200, 230400
Data bits	5, 6, 7, 8
Stop bits	1, 2
Parity	'none', 'even', 'odd'
Duplex	'half', 'full'

Note the configuration instructions in the manuals of the connected RS-232 equipment. The Controller and the other device must use the same settings and values.

Write to port

```
port:write('test data')
```

Blocking read

```
-- script will block until 10 characters are read
data = port:read(10) Blocking read
```

Timeout read

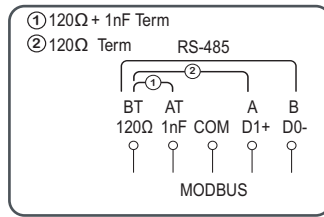
```
-- script will wait for 10 characters for 20 seconds
data = port:read(10, 20)
```

Close serial port

```
port:close()
```


13.7 RS-485

The Controller has an isolated RS-485 interface, which can be used for a serial data transmission between two or more devices.



Modbus

A D1+ = Data transfer

B D0- = Data transfer

COM = Common

① = Optional in-build low power terminator of 120 Ω + 1 nF via link AT–BT

② = Optional in-build legacy terminator of 120 Ω = link BT–A

- D1+ and D0– = twisted wires of RS-485 cable.
- COM = common wire.
- Shield must be connected to earth at end of the line.
- The line must be terminated at each end:
 - The Controller has an optional inbuilt low power terminator of **120 Ω + 1 nF** via link AT–BT. This will be used when the Controller is at one end of the line.
 - In large installations, install the master in the middle of the line. In this case, the inbuilt line termination will not be used.
- Topology:
 - Daisy chain or multi-drop with short stubs (40 m/number of stubs/derivations, max. 20 m).
 - The line must be terminated at each end.
 - Cable: e.g. Belden 9842 (2 twisted pairs, shielded, imp. 120 Ω).
- Baud rate and cable length:
 - The achievable error-free baud rate depends on length of a line, number of devices, cable type and quality, correct terminations, electromagnetic noise and other factors.
 - The Controller supports up to 230400 bit/s. When the data rate is below 100 kbps, data can typically not guaranteed be transmitted at a distance up to 1200 m. At higher data rates, the cable length must be reduced:

Table 72: Typical RS-485 baud rates for different cable lengths

Baud rate (bit/s)	Max. cable length (m)
300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600	1200 m
115200	750 m
230400	600 m

- All devices on a RS-485 line must use the same baud rate. The max. cable length for a given baud rate may be reduced.

The Modbus protocol can be used on the RS-485 port. The configuration of a Modbus line is described in the Modbus chapter on page 199:

- Settings using profiles see *Modbus RTU Settings* on page 202
- Settings using scripts see *Modbus RTU configuration commands* on page 212.

13.7.1 Configuration commands

In the following script commands for the data transfer between the Controller and another device using RS-485 are described. **Serial** commands are listed in the **Helpers** tab of the script editor.

Path: **Configurator** → **Scripting** tab → **Event-based** button → **Editor** icon in the **Script** list.



Note the wiring and configuration instructions in the manuals of the connected RS-485 equipment.

13.7.2 Open connection

If using the scripts in the **Helpers** tab of the script command edit `\/dev/RS485'` instead of `\/dev/RS232'`.

```
require('serial')
-- communication example with 38400 bit/s
port = serial.open('\/dev/RS485', {
  baudrate = 38400,
  databits = 8,
  stopbits = 1,
  parity = 'none',
  duplex = 'half'
})
```

Table 73: RS-485 open connection settings

Settings	Values
Baud rate	300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200, 230400
Data bits	5, 6, 7, 8
Stop bits	1, 2
Parity	'none', 'even', 'odd'
Duplex	'half'

Write to port

```
port:write('test data')
```

Blocking read

```
-- script will block until 10 characters are read
data = port:read(10) Blocking read
```

Timeout read

```
-- script will wait for 10 characters for 20 seconds
data = port:read(10, 20)
```

Close serial port

```
port:close()
```

13.8 Modbus

Modbus is an open standard for client/server communication. The client sends a request message and the server sends a response message. The values of a server are saved in registers which can be accessed by the client.

The Controller supports Modbus RTU serial communication via the RS-485 interface and Modbus TCP communication via the RJ45 Ethernet interface. In Modbus RTU mode, the **client** is usually referred to as the **master** and the **server** as the **slave**.

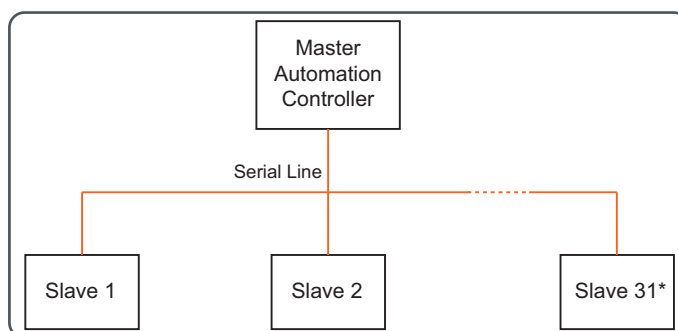
In general, the Controller is the Modbus master/client. The supported registers of a slave/server can be mapped with objects of the application *250 - User Parameter*. Thus, inputs, outputs, measured values and states of a server can be monitored and controlled. Use these objects for the basic functions of the Controller such as visualization, trend logging and scheduling, as well as for advanced functions using LUA scripting.

Tables of Modbus registers are available in Modbus device manuals. For general information about the Modbus protocol and data model, refer to Modbus.org.

As the Controller supports both Modbus RTU and Modbus TCP, buildings can be analysed and controlled in depth. With Modbus TCP, it is also possible to communicate remotely with Modbus devices installed in different buildings.

13.8.1 Access via RS-485

The most common method of Modbus communication is Modbus RTU serial communication via the RS-485 interface. The Controller has RS-485 connectors for Modbus and acts as a master.



* By Modbus specification a serial line is limited to 31 slaves.

Slaves

By Modbus specification a serial line is limited to 31 slaves. The Network Automation Controller is not limited but designed for 31 slaves. The Application Controller is limited to a maximum of 6 Modbus slaves.

Schneider Electric offers a wide range of Modbus RTU devices which can be easily integrated with the Controller:

- PM: Power Meter range (e.g current, voltage, power, power factor, frequency, energy)
- iEM: Watt-hour meter range (e.g. current, voltage, power, power factor, frequency, energy)
- SIM10M: Smart Interface module (Pulse counter e.g. for water, gas, watt hours)
- Masterpact: Circuit Breaker Manager
- Compact: Circuit breakers for high loads
- Vigilohm: Insulation monitoring
- Smartlink RTU: smart communication I/O module

- SE 8000: Room Controllers
- TC 303: Digital Fan Coil Thermostat.

A complete building can be analysed and controlled in depth via a Modbus RTU line. Moreover, access Modbus slaves in another RTU line by using Modbus TCP over Modbus gateways.

Easy configuration with profiles

The slaves in a RTU line can be easily configured. Preinstalled profiles (*.json files) are available for the slaves. A profile provides a list of usable registers of the slave. Select the registers required and map these with objects of the application *250 - User Parameter*. Step by step configuration is described in *Configure preinstalled profiles* on page 201. There is also a list of available profiles.

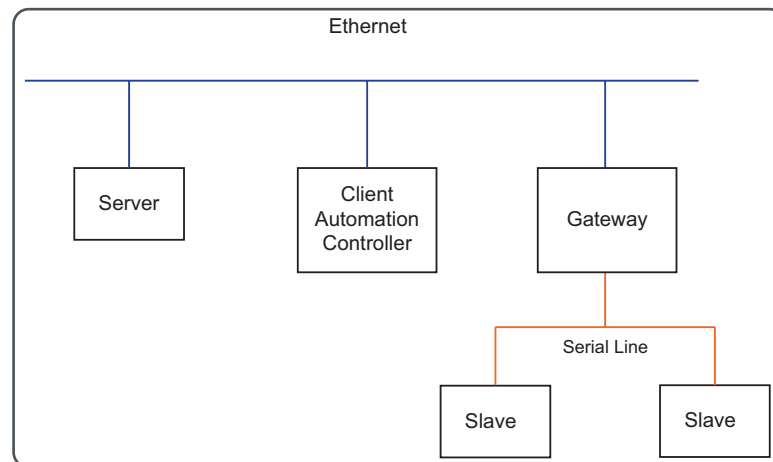
If there is no preinstalled profile for the device to be integrated, download a profile and adapt it for your product. See *Add and edit profiles* on page 205.

Configuration with scripts

If familiar with programming in LUA, use scripts (see *Modbus settings using scripts* on page 207). If using the Controller as a slave, it is mandatory to use scripts instead of a profile. A combination of profiles and scripts cannot be used.

13.8.2 Access via Ethernet

The Controller can communicate as a client with servers via TCP/IP. Servers or slaves can either be directly accessed via Ethernet or via a Modbus/IP gateway.



An example of direct connection via Ethernet is *Smartlink IP*, where the Controller acts as a client and Smartlink IP acts as a server. The configuration of IP-communication, channels, inputs and mapping is done via the profile *Smartlink TCP*.

A gateway connects Modbus via Ethernet (RJ45) with a Modbus serial line (RS-485 interface). Up to 31 Modbus RTU slaves can be connected with a gateway. The configuration can be performed via the profiles of the RTU slaves. The connection type for each slave in the serial Modbus line is TCP/IP. All slaves must be linked with the IP address of the gateway.

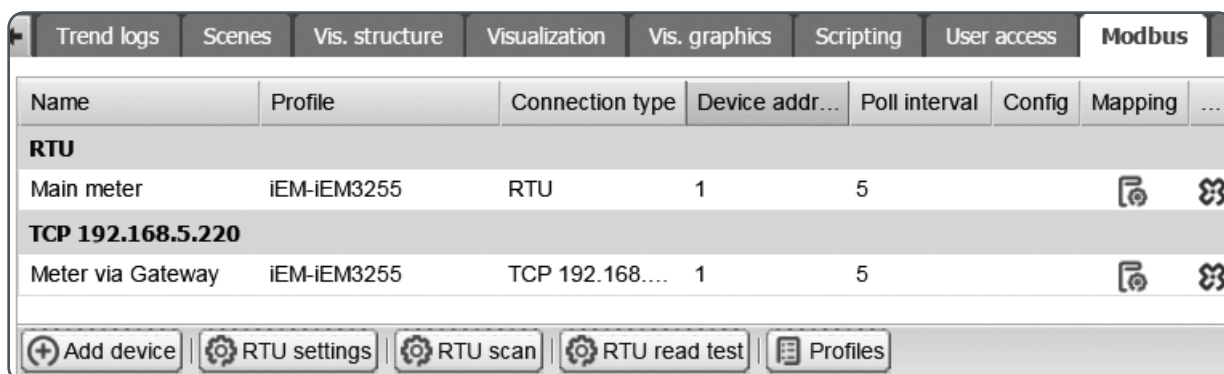
Step by step instructions for configuring RTU slaves are described in *Configure preinstalled profiles* on page 201. Therein is a list of available profiles.

The Modbus TCP Interface allows up to 100 open TCP connections (e.g. servers/slaves).

13.8.3 Configure preinstalled profiles

Configuration is done in the **Modbus** tab. Modbus slaves (servers) can be added via either the **Add device** button or the **RTU scan** button.

Path: **Configurator** → **Modbus** tab.



These steps configure Modbus slaves (servers) using profiles:

- ① Enable Modbus RTU communication (click the **RTU Settings** button).
- ② (Optional) Scan for Modbus RTU devices via the **RTU scan** button. If RTU is not enabled, scanning does not work.
- ③ If the RTU scan function is not possible, click the **Add device** button and assign the correct profile.
- ④ Edit the Modbus device (**Modbus** list) to set the polling period.
- ⑤ Select registers and check the data type.
- ⑥ If necessary, create new objects of the **250 - User Parameter** application.
- ⑦ Map the objects of the application to the selected registers.

List of preinstalled Modbus profiles

Table 74: Preinstalled Modbus profiles

Profile	Description	RTU scan
CM-CM3250	Circuit Monitor	
CM-CM3350	Circuit Monitor	
CM-CM4000	Circuit Monitor	
Compact_NSX-Compact_NSX_A	Distribution Application Type A for NSX	Yes
Compact_NSX-Compact_NSX_E	Distribution Application Type E for NSX	Yes
EM-EM3550	Energy Meter EM3550	
EM-EM3555	Energy Meter EM3555	
EM-EM6400	Power Meter EM6400	
EM-EM6433	Power Meter EM6433	
EM-EM6434	Power Meter EM6434	
EM-EM6436	Power Meter EM6436	
EM-EM6436dual	Power Meter EM6436dual	
EM-EM6438	Power Meter EM6438	
ION-ION6200	Power Meter ION6200	
ION-ION7300	Power Meter ION7300	
ION-ION7330	Power Meter ION7330	
ION-ION7350	Power Meter ION7350	
ION-ION7550	Power Meter ION7550	
ION-ION7650	Power Meter ION7650	
Masterpact_NT_NW-Masterpact_A	Circuit Breaker Manager for Masterpact	Yes
Masterpact_NT_NW-Masterpact_E	Circuit Breaker Manager for Masterpact	

Profile	Description	RTU scan
Masterpact_NT_NW-Masterpact_H	Circuit Breaker Manager for Masterpact	
Masterpact_NT_NW-Masterpact_P	Circuit Breaker Manager for Masterpact	Yes
PM-PM1200	Power Meter PM1200	
PM-PM210	Power Meter PM210	
PM-PM3250	Power Meter PM3250	Yes
PM-PM3255	Power Meter PM3255	Yes
PM-PM500	Power Meter 500	
PM-PM5110	Power Meter PM5110	
PM-PM5111	Power Meter PM5111	
PM-PM5310	Power Meter PM5310	
PM-PM5320	Power Meter PM5320	
PM-PM5330	Power Meter PM5330	
PM-PM5331	Power Meter PM5331	
PM-PM5340	Power Meter PM5340	
PM-PM5341	Power Meter PM5341	
PM-PM5350	Power Meter PM5350	
PM-PM5560	Power Meter PM5560	
PM-PM5561	Power Meter PM5561	
PM-PM5563	Power Meter PM5563	
PM-PM710	Power Meter PM710	
PM-PM750	Power Meter PM750	
PM-PM810	Power Meter PM810	
PM-PM820	Power Meter PM820	
PM-PM850	Power Meter PM850	
PM-PM870	Power Meter PM870	
PM-PM9C	Power Meter PM9C	
Power Tag	Energy Sensor	
iEM-iEM3150	Watt-hour Meter iEM3150	Yes
iEM-iEM3155	Watt-hour Meter iEM3155	Yes
iEM-iEM3250	Watt-hour Meter iEM3250	Yes
iEM-iEM3255	Watt-hour Meter iEM3255	Yes
iEM-iEM3350	Watt-hour Meter iEM3350	Yes
iEM-iEM3355	Watt-hour Meter iEM3355	Yes
iEM-iEM2150	Watt-hour Meter iEM2150	Yes
iEM-iEM2155	Watt-hour Meter iEM2155	Yes
SIM10M	SIM10M	
TC303	Digital Fan Coil Thermostat	
TC900	Digital thermostats	
SE8300	Low voltage FCU Controller	
SE8600	RTU, Heat pump & IAQ Controller	
SER8300	Line Voltage FCU Controller	
Smartlink-RTU	Acti9 Smartlink-RTU	Yes
Smartlink-TCP	Acti9 Smartlink-TCP	
Vigilohm IM20	Vigilohm IM20 (Insulation monitoring)	Yes
Vigilohm IM400	Vigilohm IM400 (Insulation monitoring)	Yes

13.8.4 Modbus RTU Settings

In order to communicate with Modbus slaves connected over Modbus RTU (serial), it is mandatory to enable the communication and set the connection details.

Path: **Modbus** tab → **RTU-Settings** button.

RTU (serial) enabled

This option enables Modbus RTU communication.

Port

The default setting of the serial port is `/dev/RS485`. If the Port field is empty, `/dev/RS485` is automatically inserted when the **Save** button is pressed.

Baud rate

All Modbus devices must use the same setting.

All metering devices can run either on 9600 bit/s (maximum cable distance 1200 m) or 19200 bit/s (maximum cable distance 900 m). 19200 bit/s is default for most devices.

Some devices can also work with other speeds.

Parity

All Modbus devices must use the same setting.

Select either *None*, *Even*, or *Odd*. *Even* with *One stop bit* is the default for most devices.

Duplex

Must be *Half-duplex* for RS-485.

Reset to defaults

This button resets all RTU setting parameters to their default.

13.8.5 Modbus RTU scan

Devices with the *RTU scan* feature can be detected and added using the *RTU scan* function (see *List of preinstalled Modbus profiles* on page 201).

Path: **Modbus** tab → **RTU scan** button.

- ① Ensure that Modbus slaves are connected to the Controller via the RS-485 interface.
- ② Click the **RTU scan** button.
- ③ Select the start and end device addresses of the slaves.
- ④ Click the **Save** button.
- ⑤ The Controller recognises Modbus devices that can be detected via the RTU scan function. Modbus devices that are not capable of being detected must firstly be assigned a correct profile and then edit the names and the poll intervals.
- ⑥ Choose which devices to be inserted in the **Modbus device** list.

13.8.6 Add Modbus device

Manually add Modbus devices.

Path: **Modbus** tab → **Add device** button.

- ① Click the **Add device** button.
- ② Edit and save the parameters in the next table.

Table 75: Modbus device parameters

Name	Name of Modbus device
Connection type	RTU (RS-485) TCP/IP
Profile	Select an installed profile
Device address	Select the Modbus device address. Note: It is mandatory to select this address on the Modbus device (e.g. via the display menu or the configuration software of the device).
Poll interval	Select an interval. Value 5 is the default (new values are read every 5 seconds).
IP address	If the <i>TCP/IP</i> connection type is selected, set the IP address. If the Modbus device (server) is directly connected to the Controller (client), set the IP address of the Modbus device. If the Modbus device (slave) is connected via a RTU/TCP/IP gateway, set the IP address of the gateway (e.g. EGX300, Smartlink IP).
Port	(Optional) Set the Port for Modbus TCP communication. The standard Modbus default Port is 502.

13.8.7 Add Objects

It is recommended to prepare objects before the mapping procedure. New objects can be added in the **Objects** tab (see *Add Unit parameters* on page 106).

For each register in the **Object mapping** list, edit the following parameters:

Table 76: Object mapping parameters

Name	Name of the register in the object mapping list.
Link to object	Select the object where the value read from the Modbus register will be saved. Only select existing objects from the drop down menu.
Value send delta	Set the value of delta. If the change of value read from Modbus register is bigger than this delta, the value is sent to the object.
Unit/suffix	If the <i>User parameter</i> application is selected, a unit is used from the profile or can be modified.
Keywords	Keywords are assigned to the object. Keywords can be used in scripts (optional).
Description	(Optional).

13.8.8 Modbus Mapping

When a Modbus device is added, bindings between Modbus registers and objects have to be created. This is done by setting the register mapping. The registers of the Modbus device can be mapped with objects of the application *250 - User Parameter*. For each device in the Modbus device list, open a mapping list.

Path: **Modbus** tab → **Modbus device** list → **Mapping** column → **Object mapping** list.

Object mapping for Main meter				
Name	Linked to object	Current value	Type	D...
Main meter - Reactive Power			Holding register: 3067 (fla...	
Main meter - Apparent Power			Holding register: 3075 (fla...	
Main meter - Power Factor s...			Holding register: 3083 (fla...	
Main meter - PF Quadrant			Holding register: 3083 (fla...	

Each row of the Mapping table represents one of the Modbus registers (defined in the device profile). Decide which registers to map, then check the data type of the selected registers. Link with objects of the C-Bus application *250 - User Parameter*.

For the mapping, only select existing C-Bus objects with the correct application and data type.

Examples

- The register type of the *Reactive Power* is *float32*. In this case, link with the data type *Floating point (32 bit)*. The application is *250 - User parameter*.
- The register type of the *PF Quadrant* is internally converted from *float32* to *uint32 (float32=>uint32)*. In this case, link with data type *Unsigned Integer (32 Bit)*. The application is *250 - User parameter*.

13.8.9 RTU read test

RTU read test allows quick reading of values stored in Modbus registers with different parameters.

Path: **Modbus** tab → **RTU read test** button.

For testing, select a register address from the **Object mapping** list. This functionality is also very useful when creating and testing your own Modbus profiles.

13.8.10 Add and edit profiles

If your Modbus device profile is not in the list of preinstalled profiles, define your own profile.

Structure of a profile

Modbus device profiles are distributed in *.json files. Use any common text editor to create and edit your profile.



Consider using a text editor with enhanced support for .json files. These editors display .json file content with syntax colouring/formatting and this makes the file easier to edit and save.

The structure of a profile is shown here:

```
{
  "manufacturer": "Schneider Electric",
  "description": "Example device",
  "mapping": [
    { "name": "Output 1", "bus_datatype": "bool", "type": "coil",
      "address": 0, "writable": 1 },
    { "name": "Input 1", "bus_datatype": "float16",
      "type": "inputregister", "address": 0,
      "value_multiplier": 0.001, "units": "V" }
  ]
}
```

Mapping parameters

Each "mapping" line in the .json file contains mapping information for one Modbus register or coil. All the possible mapping parameters are listed in the table below.

Table 77: Profile mapping parameters

Parameter	Description	Type	Required
Name	Object name, e.g. Output 2.	String	Yes
bus_datatype	C-Bus object data type, key from dt table, e.g. float32.	String/ Number	Yes
type	Modbus register type. Possible values: coil, discreteinput, register, inputregister.	String	Yes
address	Register address (0-based).	Number	Yes
writable	Set to true to enable writing to the register if type is either coil or register.	Boolean	No
write_only	Set to true to disable reading coil or register value when "writable" is enabled.	Boolean	No
datatype	Modbus value data type. If set, conversion will be done automatically. Possible values: bool, uint16, int16, float16, uint32, int32, float32, uint64, int64, quad10k, s10k.	String	No
value_delta	New value is sent when the difference between previously sent value and current value is larger than delta. Defaults to 0 (send after each read).	Number	No
value_base	Add specified number to the resulting value.	Number	No
value_multiplier	Multiply resulting value by the specified number,	Number	No
value_bitmask	Bit mask to apply. Shifting is done automatically based on the least significant '1' found in the mask.	Number	No
value_nan	Array of 16-bit integers. If specified and the read operation returns the same array, no further processing of the value is done.	Array	No
value_conv	Apply one of the inbuilt conversion functions.	String (Int)	No
value_custom	Name of an inbuilt enumeration or a list of key → value mapping. Resulting value will be 0 if key is not found.	String/ Object	No
internal	Not visible to the user when set to true . Must be used for scale registers.	Boolean	No
units	Object units/suffix.	String	No

Parameter	Description	Type	Required
address_scale	Address of the register containing value scale. Value = value * 10 ^ scale	Number	No
read_count	Number of registers to read at once (for devices that only support reading of a specific block of registers).	Number	No
read_swap	Swap register order during conversion (endianness).	Boolean	No
read_offset	Position of first register of data from the block of registers (0-based).	Number	No
timeout	Specify device timeout in seconds. If the slave device does not reply within specified time, it is treated as a timeout error. Default values: 0.5 s for Modbus RTU, 3 s for Modbus TCP	Number	No
write_multiple	This parameter sets the multiple writing function (function 15 or 16 is used instead of function 5 or 6). If "Type" is set to "register" and "Write_multiple" is set to "true", Modbus function 16 is used for writing to the register. If "Type" is set to "coil" and "Write_multiple" is set to "true", Modbus function 15 is used for writing to the coil. Default value is "false", which means that Modbus function 5 or 6 (depending on register type) is used for writing.	String	No

When the Modbus devices are physically connected, use the RTU read test. This allows quick reading of values stored in Modbus registers (See *RTU read test* on page 205).

Export profiles

When creating a new profile, use an existing profile as an example. If a preinstalled profile must be modified, e.g. to add registers, it can be exported, modified in Notepad and imported again. If required to keep both versions, rename the new json file.

Path: **Modbus** tab → **Profiles** button → **Profiles** list → **Export** icon. 

- ① Click the **Profiles** button.
- ② Click the **Export** icon in the profiles list and select where to save the .json file.

Editing of the file with a text editor is now possible.

Import profiles

Import new or changed .json files in the **Profiles** list.

Path: **Modbus** tab → **Profiles** button → **Profiles** list → **Add profile** button.

- ① Click the **Add Profiles** button and select the .json file.
If something is wrong, e.g. the characters “, []{}” are missing or in the wrong place, this error message appears: *Invalid profile selected*. If a parameter is not recognised, it will just be skipped.
- ② After successful import, the profile becomes available in the **Profiles** list.

Delete profiles

Path: **Modbus** tab → **Profiles** button → **Profiles** list → **Delete** icon. 

Click the **Delete** icon to delete a profile.

13.9 Modbus settings using scripts

Function codes and corresponding master functions, MODBUS RTU configuration commands, and, Modbus slave functions can be set up to required specifications.

13.9.1 Function Codes and corresponding Master Functions

All the possible Modbus function codes that can be used in the Controller are listed below. There is an LUA function in the Controller for each function code.

All of these functions can be used for both Modbus TCP and Modbus RTU.

FC#01 Read Coils

Name	Read single coil
Command	<code>coil = mb:readcoils(address)</code>
Arguments	[address]: address of the coils
Returned values	1: ON, 0: OFF
Exception codes:	01 or 02 or 03 or 04

Name	Read multiple coil
Command	<code>coil = mb:readcoils(start, count)</code>
Arguments	[start]: address of the first coil to read [count]: number of coils to read (max. 2000)
Returned values	1: ON, 0: OFF
Exception codes	01 or 02 or 03 or 04
Script example	<code>coil1,coil2,coil3 = mb:readcoils(1000, 3)</code> Value read from coil address 1000 is returned into variable coil1. Value read from coil address 1001 is returned into variable coil2. Value read from coil address 1002 is returned into variable coil3.

FC#02 Read Discrete Inputs

Name	Read discrete input
Command	<code>value = mb:readdiscreteinputs(address)</code>
Arguments	[address]: address of the input
Returned values	1: ON, 0: OFF
Exception codes:	01 or 02 or 03 or 04

Name	Read discrete inputs
Command	<code>value = mb:readdiscreteinputs(address, count)</code>
Arguments	[address]: address of first input to read [count]: number of inputs to read (max. 2000)
Returned values	1: ON, 0: OFF
Exception codes:	01 or 02 or 03 or 04
Script example	<code>bool1, bool2 = mb:readdiscreteinputs(10, 2)</code> Value read from discrete input address 10 is returned into variable bool1. Value read from discrete input address 11 is returned into variable bool2.

FC#03 Read Holding Registers

Name	Read registers
Command	<code>value = mb:readregisters(address, count)</code>
Arguments	[address]: address of the first register to read [count]: number of registers to read (max 125)
Returned values	2 byte values
Exception codes:	01 or 02 or 03 or 04
Script example	<code>value1, value2 = mb:readregisters(1100, 2)</code> Value read from register address 1100 is returned into variable value1. Value read from register address 1101 is returned into variable value2.

FC#04 Read Input Registers

Name	Read input registers
Command	<code>value = mb:readinputregisters(address, count)</code>
Arguments	[address]: address of the first input register to read [count]: number of input registers to read (max. 125)
Returned values	2 byte values
Exception codes:	01 or 02 or 03 or 04
Script example	<code>value1, value2 = mb:readinputregisters(1015, 2)</code> Value read from input register address 1015 is returned into variable value1. Value read from input register address 1016 is returned into variable value2.

FC#05 Write Single Coil

Name	Write single bit
Command	<code>mb:writebits(address, value)</code>
Arguments	[address]: address of the coil [value]: true or false

FC#06 Write Single Register

Name	Write single register
Command	<code>mb:writeregisters(address, value)</code>
Arguments	[address]: address of the register [value]: value of the register

FC#0F Write Multiple Coils

Name	Write multiple bits
Command	<code>mb:writebits(address, value1, value2, value3,...)</code>
Arguments	[address]: start address of the coils [value1]: true or false, [value2]: true or false, ... (max. 1968 bits)
Script example	<code>mb:writebits(1000, true, false)</code> Write bit at address 1000 to true (on) Write bit at address 1001 to false (off)

FC#0F Write Multiple Registers

Name	Write multiple registers
Command	<code>mb:writeregisters(address, value1, value2, value3, ...)</code>
Arguments	[address]: start address of the registers [value1]: number, [value2]: number, ... (max. 123 registers)

Exception codes

```
mb:readcoils(start, count)
mb:readdiscreteinputs(start, count)
mb:readregisters(start, count)
mb:readinputregisters(start, count)
```

These commands read one or more registers/coils from the start address and return all values when successful. When an error occurs, three variables are sent back:

- Nil
- Exception code description
- Exception code (see *Table 78*).

Table 78: Modbus function exception codes

Code	Name	Meaning
01	Illegal Function	The Function Code received in the query is not an allowable action for the server (or slave). This may be because the function code is only applicable to newer devices, and was not implemented in the unit selected. It may also indicate that the server (or slave) is in the wrong state to process a request of this type, for example because it is not configured and is being asked to return register values.
02	Illegal Data Address	The data address received in the query is not an allowable address for the server (or slave). More specifically, the combination of reference number and transfer length is invalid. For a controller with 100 registers, a request of offset 96 and a length of 5 will generate exception 02.
03	Illegal Data Value	The value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for the server (or slave). This indicates a fault in the structure of the remainder of a complex request, such as the implied length is incorrect. It specifically does NOT mean that a data item submitted for storage in a register has a value outside the expectation of the application program, since the Modbus protocol is unaware of the significance of any value of any register.
04	Failure in Associated Device	An unrecoverable error occurred while the server (or slave) was attempting to perform the requested action.
05	Acknowledge	Specialized in conjunction with programming commands. The server (or slave) has accepted the request and is processing it, but a long duration of time will be required. This response is returned to prevent a timeout error from occurring in the client (or master). The client (or master) can next issue a poll program complete message to determine if processing is completed.
06	Busy, Rejected Message	Specialized use in conjunction with programming commands. The server (or slave) is engaged in processing a long-duration program command. The client (or master) will retransmit the message later when the server (or slave) is free.
07	NAK – Negative Acknowledgement	Specialized use in conjunction with programming commands. The server (or slave) is engaged in processing a long-duration program command. The client (or master) will retransmit the message later when the server (or slave) is free.
08	Memory Parity Error	Specialized use in conjunction with function codes 20 and 21 and reference type 6, indicates the extended file area failed to pass a consistency check. The server (or slave) attempted to read a record file, but detected a parity error in the memory. The client (or master) can retry the request, but service may be required on the server (or slave) device.
0A	Gateway Path Unavailable	Specialized use in conjunction with gateways. Indicates that the gateway was unable to allocate an internal communication path from the input port to the output port for processing the request.
0B	Gateway Target Device Failed to respond	Specialized use in conjunction with gateways. Indicates that no response was obtained from the target device. Usually means that the device is not present on the network.

For more information, see: <http://modbus.org>.

13.9.2 Modbus RTU configuration commands

Create Modbus RTU object

```
require('luamodbus')  
mb = luamodbus.rtu()
```

Open Modbus RTU connection

```
-- 19200 baud rate, even parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit,  
-- half duplex  
mb:open('/dev/RS485', 19200, 'E', 8, 1, 'H')  
mb:connect()
```

Terminal name

```
'/dev/RS485'
```

Parity

"N" None choose between one and two stop bits
"E" Even one stop bit is set
"O" Odd one stop bit is set

The default parity mode of Modbus is "even" parity.

Data bits and stop bits

Data bits: [Number of data bits = 5, 6, 7, 8]

Stop bits: [Number of stop bits 1, 2]

Duplex

"H" Half duplex
"F" Full duplex (not supported in RS-485)

Delay Between Frames

```
-- Wait for 1.5 seconds  
os.sleep(1.5)
```

Some devices require considerable time after the end of response until they are ready to receive the following request from the master. If the behaviour of the device is not known, select (1.5).

Set slave address

```
-- Set slave address to 123  
mb:setslave(123)
```

Address range is [1..247].

Read registers

```
-- Read from address 1000 and write it to value  
value = mb:readregisters(1000)
```

Close modbus connection

```
mb:close()
```

Example 1

```
-- init modbus on first script execution
  if not mb then
    require('Luamodbus')
    mb = Luamodbus.rtu()
    mb:open('/dev/RS485', 38400, 'E', 8, 1, 'H')
    mb:connect()
  end
  mb:setslave(30)
  mb:flush()
```

Example 2

```
-- Timeout interval between two consecutive bytes of the same
-- message
  mb:getbytetimeout()
  mb:setbytetimeout(timeout)
```

Example 3

```
-- Timeout interval used to wait for a response:
  mb:getresponsetimeout()
  mb:setresponsetimeout(timeout)
```

Example 4

```
-- Timeout interval used for an incoming indication from
-- master (Slave mode only)
  mb:getreceivetimeout()
  mb:setreceivetimeout(timeout)
```

13.9.3 Modbus master functions

`mb:setslave(slaveid)`

Sets slave id to read/write data from/to.

`mb:readcoils(start, count)`

`start` – address of first coil to read.

`count` – number of coils to read.

`mb:readdiscreteinputs(start, count)`

`start` – address of first discrete input to read.

`count` – number of discrete inputs to read

`mb:readregisters(start, count)`

`start` – address of first holding register to read.

`count` – number of holding registers to read.

`mb:readinputregisters(start, count)`

`start` – address of input register to read.

`count` – number of input registers to read.

Returns all values on success and nil, error description on error.

`mb:writebits(start, v1, [v2, [v3, ...]])`

Writes values to coils from start address.

`mb:writeregisters(start, v1, [v2, [v3, ...]])`

Writes values to registers/coils from the start address.

Single write will be used when only one value is supplied, multiple write otherwise returns all of values written on success and nil, error description on error.

`mb:reportslaveid()`

Reads slave internal data.

Returns values on success.

Returns nil, error description on error.

13.9.4 Modbus slave functions

Receive data from master

```
mb:receive()
```

Receives data from master with 1 minute timeout.

Returns data as a binary string on success.

Returns nil, error description on error.

Set Modbus mapping of slave device

```
mb:setmapping(coils, inputs, holding_regs, input_regs)
```

Creates memory mapping for the registers with size specified for each type.

Handle slave

```
mb:handleslave()
```

Waits for an incoming indication from master and sends a reply when necessary.

Get functions

```
mb:getcoils(start, count)
```

```
mb:getdiscreteinputs(start, count)
```

```
mb:getinputregisters(start, count)
```

```
mb:getregisters(start, count)
```

Gets one or many register/coil/input values from mapping from the start address.

Returns all values on success.

Returns nil, error description on error, exception code if applicable.

Set functions

```
mb:setcoils(start, v1, [v2, [v3, ...]])
```

```
mb:setdiscreteinputs(start, v1, [v2, [v3, ...]])
```

```
mb:setinputregisters(start, v1, [v2, [v3, ...]])
```

```
mb:setregisters(start, v1, [v2, [v3, ...]])
```

Sets values to register/coil mapping from the start address.

Returns true on success.

Returns nil, error description on error, exception code if applicable.

Callback functions

```
mb:setwritecoilcb(fn)
```

```
mb:setwriteregistercb(fn)
```

Sets a callback function for coil/register write event.

Callback will accept two parameters: coil/register address and value (boolean or number).

For multiple writes callback is executed for each coil/register separately.

Use nil to remove a callback.

14 BACnet

BACnet is designed to allow communication of building automation and control systems for applications such as heating, ventilation, air conditioning control, lighting control, access control, fire detection systems and their associated equipment. The BACnet protocol provides exchange information for building automation devices, regardless of the particular building service they perform.

There are two formats for BACnet: BACnet Ethernet and BACnet IP. Both formats use Ethernet media for communications. The Controller only supports BACnet IP format via the RJ45 Ethernet connector.

The Controller can act as a BACnet server only (not as a client). The Controller serves data which can be read by BACnet client devices (like Building Management Systems). BACnet client devices can write data to the server. This allows for a wide functional integration. For example, the Controller gets Modbus master measurement data from a Modbus RTU and delivers the data via BACnet to a BMS (Building Management System).

BACnet IP is a protocol that complies with the following standards:

ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ISO	International Organization for Standardization

The Controller has been certified by BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) as a BACnet Application Specific Controller (B – ASC).

The Controller complies with all the necessary interoperability requirements.

14.1 List of all BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs) supported

Table 79: BACnet supported interoperability building blocks

Data Sharing	ReadProperty-B	DS-RP-B
	ReadPropertyMultiple-B	DS-RPM-B
	WriteProperty-B	DS-WP-B
	COV-B	DS-COV-B
Device and Network Management	Dynamic Device Binding-B	DM-DDB-B
	Dynamic Object Binding-B	DM-DOB-B
	DeviceCommunicationsControl-B	DM-DCC-B
	TimeSynchronization-B	DM-TS-B
	UTCTimeSynchronization-B	DM-UTC-B
	ReinitializeDevice-B	DM-RD-B

14.1.1 BACnet Object Types Supported

Device ID

Analogue Value

Binary Value

14.1.2 Data Link Layer Options

Media: BACnet IP

Option: Register as a Foreign Device

14.2 Schneider Electric Building Management System

Schneider Electric offers *EcoStruxure™ Building Operation* software (EBO) as a BACnet certified Building Management System. EBO is used to configure and commission *Enterprise Server* (software) and the *Automation Server* (hardware) which can retrieve and send data to the Controller.

The following image shows a list of BACnet objects from the *Measurement* application in the EBO software.

Name	Value
Local . Measurement . A . 0 (0.228.0.0)	-5.00 °C
Local . Measurement . a . 26 (0.228.26.26)	-50.00 %
Local . Measurement . B . 1 (0.228.1.1)	-6.00 A
Local . Measurement . b . 27 (0.228.27.27)	-20.00 dB (SPL)
Local . Measurement . C . 2 (0.228.2.2)	-12.00 deg
Local . Measurement . c . 28 (0.228.28.28)	-500.00 ppm
Local . Measurement . D . 3 (0.228.3.3)	-4.00
Local . Measurement . d . 29 (0.228.29.29)	-6,000.00 RPM
Local . Measurement . E . 4 (0.228.4.4)	1.00
Local . Measurement . e . 30 (0.228.30.30)	5.00 s
Local . Measurement . F . 5 (0.228.5.5)	-23.00 F
Local . Measurement . f . 31 (0.228.31.31)	15.00 min
Local . Measurement . G . 6 (0.228.6.6)	-8.00 H
Local . Measurement . g . 32 (0.228.32.32)	9.00 h
Local . Measurement . H . 7 (0.228.7.7)	-50.00 Hz
Local . Measurement . h . 33 (0.228.33.33)	-33.00 Sv
Local . Measurement . I . 8 (0.228.8.8)	-36.00 J

The configuration of the Controller is done in three steps:

- ① Select objects in the objects list and activate the *Export* function.
- ② Configure BACnet communication (BACnet Settings).
- ③ Check the view of BACnet objects and optionally save as a .csv file that can be used for documentation.

Emergency and exit light testing using building management software

Using BACnet, you can initiate Duration and Function tests from the building management software.

Enter one of the following numbers in the **Value** field of an Emergency and exit lighting object to initiate a test.

Table 80: BACnet supported values for Emergency and exit lighting testing

Test/Mode	Set Value to:
Normal mode	0
Function test	1
Duration test	2
Set Inhibit mode	3
Set Rest mode	4
Re-light/Reset Inhibit	7



IMPORTANT: Do not enter any number other than 0 to 4 and 7 into the **Value** field.

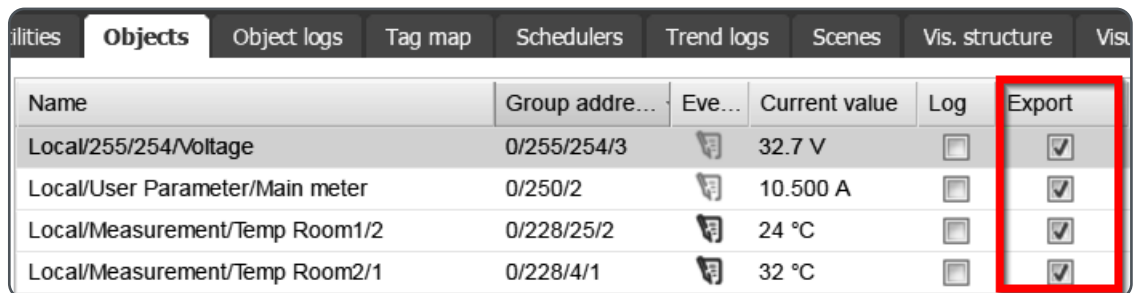
14.3 Object export

Use the following applications for exporting to BACnet:

Number	Application
56 (48-127)	Lighting
192	Media Transport Objects
202	Trigger control
203	Enable
205	Multi Room Audio
206	Error
208	Security
228	Measurement
238	Emergency Lighting
250	User Parameter
255	Unit Parameter

Path: **Configurator** → **Objects** tab → **Export** column.

Select the objects which are to be made available for BACnet in the Export column.



Name	Group address	Event	Current value	Log	Export
Local/255/254/Voltage	0/255/254/3		32.7 V	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Local/User Parameter/Main meter	0/250/2		10.500 A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Local/Measurement/Temp Room1/2	0/228/25/2		24 °C	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Local/Measurement/Temp Room2/1	0/228/4/1		32 °C	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Most C-Bus applications deliver, or are controlled by (AV) analogue numeric values 0-255 as well as status indication. These can be used as on/off/dim commands or scene triggers to C-Bus units, depending upon the C-Bus application being used.

The application 250 - *User Parameter* with the *Boolean* data type will appear as binary values (BV) with a range of 0-1. On C-Bus, this translates to 0=Off and 1=On.

14.4 BACnet configuration

The Controller can be configured as a BACnet server in the *BACnet Settings* of the Controller. The BACnet *Building Management System* on the client site will then discover the selected data.

14.4.1 BACnet settings

Configure the Controller as a BACnet server in the *BACnet Settings*.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** button → **System** button → **Network** tab → **BACnet Settings**.

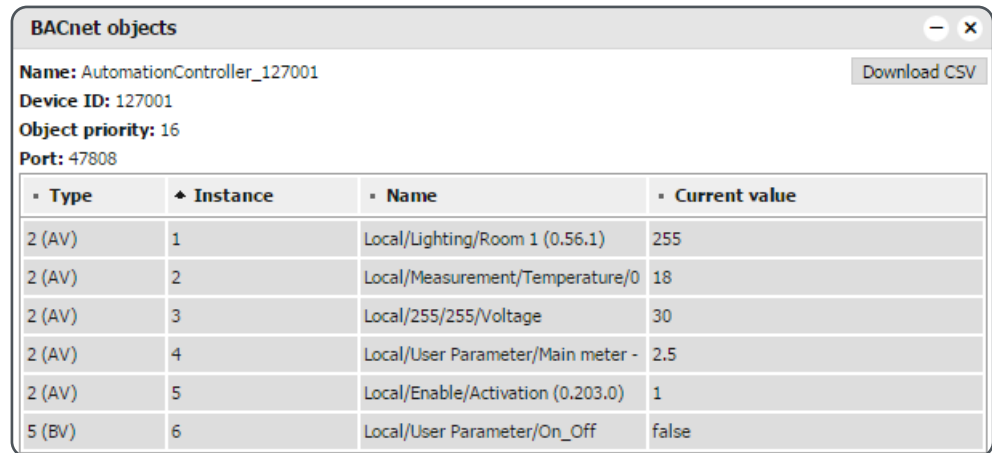
Server enabled	Enable/disable Controller as a BACnet server.
Device ID	BACnet device ID which must be unique on the BACnet network.
Password	BACnet password.
Objects priority	Define the priority array to which the Controller writes. The default value of the object property is 16. The Controller writes to the <i>Relinquish Default</i> (RD) property by first reading (Upload from BMS) and takes the current value of the object. It is not possible to change the value of the <i>Relinquish Default</i> property afterwards. If the object read from the Controller has a higher value than the RD property, it raises the Overwritten flag.
Add group address to object name	Names of BACnet objects contain information about group address (see <i>BACnet objects</i> on page 220).
Use comment as object description	Comments in objects are visible in the SBO (<i>StruxureWare Building Operation WorkStation</i> software) as a description.
Convert object units to BACnet units	When selected, object units are displayed as BACnet units in the EBO software.
Port	BACnet port, default 47808.
BBMD* IP	Router IP.
BBMD* port	Router port.
BBMD* lease time (seconds)	Registration resend interval.

* BBMD is for forwarding BACnet broadcast across routers to other networks. Typically, this feature is not used. BBMD is an optional setup parameter and does not require configuration unless using BBMD onsite.

14.4.2 BACnet objects

Open a list of BACnet objects with the selected parameters.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** button → **System** button → **Network** tab → **BACnet objects**.



The screenshot shows a window titled "BACnet objects" with a "Download CSV" button. Below the title bar, the following information is displayed: Name: AutomationController_127001, Device ID: 127001, Object priority: 16, and Port: 47808. A table lists six BACnet objects with their respective types, instance numbers, names, and current values.

Type	Instance	Name	Current value
2 (AV)	1	Local/Lighting/Room 1 (0.56.1)	255
2 (AV)	2	Local/Measurement/Temperature/0	18
2 (AV)	3	Local/255/255/Voltage	30
2 (AV)	4	Local/User Parameter/Main meter -	2.5
2 (AV)	5	Local/Enable/Activation (0.203.0)	1
5 (BV)	6	Local/User Parameter/On_Off	false

In the *Type* column of the above screen shot, there are five analogue (AV) and one binary value (BV).

BACnet objects can optionally be downloaded to a .csv file via the **Download CSV** button. This list can be used for documentation.

14.4.3 BACnet COV setting

The first 256 objects exported to BACnet can use the change of value (COV) subscription on the client side. This parameter defines the minimum change of value (delta) which implies a change of the value on the client side.

The default value is 1.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** button → **System** button → **Network** tab → **BACnet COV settings**.

15 Advanced network functions

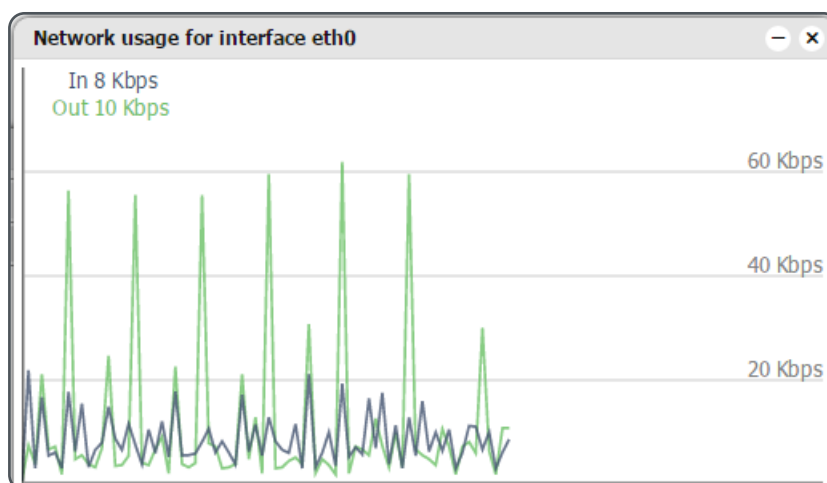
Advanced network functions allow views of network settings, routes, utilities, access settings and remote diagnosis

15.1 Network Settings

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** button → **System** button → **Network** tab.

15.1.1 Interfaces

Click **Interfaces** in the **Network** tab and then click **eth0** to configure the IP address (see *Change IP settings of the Ethernet interface* on page 31). Click the **Show network usage** button to check the network traffic.



15.1.2 Routes

The routing table shows the network routes associated with the Controller.

Click **Routes** in the **Network** tab.

Interface	Destination	Gateway	Network mask	Flags
eth0	0.0.0.0	192.168.5.5	0.0.0.0	UG
eth0	192.168.5.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U
usb0	192.168.254.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U

eth0 network adapter

196.168.5.5 is the address of the gateway (router), i.e. access to Internet.

192.168.5.0 is the address of the local network (default is 192.168.0.0).

usb0 network adapter

192.168.254.0 is the address of the USB-B network connection. The IP address of the Controller on this network is 192.168.254.10.

15.2 Network utilities

Use network utilities to check the connection to other network devices via **Ping** and **Trace route**. For example, check the connection between the Controller and a Modbus IP gateway or a IP camera, locally or via the public address.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utility** tab → **System** button → **Status** tab → **Network utilities**.



Depending on your network settings, the response to a ping command may be blocked.

Example of pinging a network time protocol server (NTP)

```
Network utilities
Ping Traceroute
IP / Hostname 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org
PING 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org (131.188.3.221): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=0 ttl=54 time=100.509 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=1 ttl=54 time=98.653 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=2 ttl=54 time=99.614 ms
64 bytes from 131.188.3.221: seq=3 ttl=54 time=93.555 ms

--- 0.schneider.pool.ntp.org ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 93.555/98.082/100.509 ms
```

Traceroute displays the path and delay times to a destination on the Internet.

15.3 Access via HTTP, HTTPS or VPN

The product has the feature which allow communications only over the HTTPS,with the option to rerouting non-secure HTTP connections to HTTPS to make access easier.It is also capable of not responding to all HTTP(unsecured) connection attempts and expecting all connections to be HTTPS.Additionally,products can define other ports than the default HTTPS port of 443. see *HTTP Server* on page 223

15.3.1 HTTP or HTTPS

WARNING

HTTP IS NOT A SECURE MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

- Information transmitted via HTTP is not encrypted and therefore insecure.
- You must use **HTTPS** for remote access.
- In commercial applications, the device should be located on the secured building network and HTTPS mode should be configured as "**HTTPS only, redirect HTTP to HTTPS**" only.To know more on HTTPS modes, see *HTTP Server* on page 223.

Failure to follow these instructions may result in network security breaches.

15.3.2 VPN

Many network solution providers offer a way to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to get direct secure access via Internet to a local network. Usually a VPN solution requires VPN server and VPN client software.

Depending on the security standards used, VPN access can provide a high level of security.

15.3.3 HTTP Server

On the *System* page, set an additional HTTP and HTTPS port. By default, HTTP port 80 and HTTP port 443 are already set.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** button → **Services** button → **Http Server**.



The following HTTP server modes are available:

- HTTP and HTTPS enabled
- HTTPS only, redirect HTTP to HTTPS
- HTTPS only, HTTP port is disabled.

HTTP/HTTPS: If a wrong password is entered for 5 times, the webpage will be locked out for 1 min and the user will not be able to load the page.

15.3.4 HTTP SSL certificate

SSL certificates are small data files that digitally bind a cryptographic key to a device's details. When installed on a web server, it activates the padlock and the HTTPS protocol and allows secure connections from a web server to a browser.

There are a number of online SSL certificate providers. Some SSL certificates are free, whereas some are paid.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "HTTP SSL certificate". At the top, there is a "Mode" dropdown menu with the selected option "Upload new private key / certificate". Below this, there are two large text input fields: "Private key (RSA)" and "Certificate (SHA256)". At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

Mode

- Upload new private key/certificate – for upload existing RSA key/SSL certificate.

- Generate new private key/certificate – generate RSA private key/SSL certificate from one already installed.

15.4 Remote services

Use remote services (XML/JSON) to remotely activate functions or control objects.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** button → **System** button → **Services** tab → **Remote services**.

15.4.1 Parameters

Service stats

Enable/disable the function.

Username

The username is *remote*.

Password

The default password is *remote*.



When changing the password, the new password must be at least 8 characters and include a minimum of 1 uppercase letter, 1 lowercase letter and 1 digit.

15.4.2 Set value

In this example, the value of an object (light) with the composed address 0/56/1 is set to 255.



Change the IP address and password according to your settings in the below command.

Example of browser command:

```
http:// remote:remote@192.168.254.10/scada-remote?m=json&r=cbus1&c=set&matchnet=0&matchapp=56&matchgrp=0&value=255
```

Example of browser response:

```
[939524096]
```

The new value of 0/56/1 is 255 and the light is switched on remotely.

15.5 FTP server

The Controller includes an FTP server. By default, the FTP server is disabled.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** button → **System** button → **Services** tab → **FTP server**.


NOTICE

USE OF THE FTP SERVER CAN AFFECT CONTROLLER OPERATING FILES

The FTP server can expose files that are necessary for the Controller to work properly.

- Exercise care when working with files via the FTP server.
- Do not move or delete any files that are necessary for Controller operation.

Failure to follow these instructions may result in the Controller becoming inoperative.

 FTP : If a user enters wrong password for 5 times, the FTP port will be locked for 5 minutes.

15.5.1 Parameters

Server status

Enable/disable the function.

Require encryption (FTPS)

Select this function when FTP encryption is required. The FTP server will not accept an unsecured connection.

If this function is not selected, the FTP server will accept both FTP and FTPS connections.

Port


The default port is 22.

Username

The username is *ftp*.

Password

The default password is empty and must be changed prior to using FTP.

 New passwords must be at least 8 characters and contain a minimum of 1 uppercase letter, 1 lowercase letter and 1 digit.

Passive mode min port

Minimum port for passive mode.

Passive mode max port

Maximum port for passive mode.

15.6 Remote diagnostic

Remote diagnostic allows access to the controller via SSH (Secure Shell), a network protocol for secure services. By default, remote diagnostic is disabled.

Path: **Configurator** → **Utilities** button → **System** button → **Services** tab → **Remote diagnostic**.

NOTICE

USE OF THE REMOTE DIAGNOSTIC FUNCTION CAN AFFECT CONTROLLER OPERATING FILES

Remote diagnostic can expose files that are necessary for the Controller to work properly.

- **Only use the Remote diagnostic function when recommended by Schneider technical support.**
- Exercise care when using the *Remote diagnostic* function.
- Do not move or delete any files that are necessary for Controller operation.

Failure to follow these instructions may result in the Controller becoming inoperative.

By default, *remote diagnostic* is disabled. When enabled, Port 22 must be forwarded on the router.

16 Open source license information

This Schneider Electric product is provided with certain open source software components (collectively, “OSS”) developed by third parties. The OSS is licensed in accordance with the OSS license terms set forth below.

16.1 GNU General Public License v.2

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the GNU General Public License v.2 reprinted below.

a. Linux Kernel

NOTE: This copyright does “not” cover user programs that use kernel services by normal system calls - this is merely considered normal use of the kernel, and does “not” fall under the heading of “derived work”. Also note that the GPL below is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, but the instance of code that it refers to (the linux kernel) is copyrighted by me and others who actually wrote it.

Copyright (c) 1991-1992 Linus Torvalds

b. LEDE Build System

Copyright (c) 2016 LEDE Project

c. Base-files

Copyright (c) 2007-2016 OpenWrt.org

Copyright (c) 2010 Vertical Communications

d. Eibd

Copyright (c) 2005-2011 Martin Koegler

e. Luarrd

Copyright (c) 1997-2015 Tobias Oetiker

f. Opkg

Copyright (c) 2011 Mikhail Gusarov

g. Rrdtool

Copyright (c) 1997-2015 Tobias Oetiker

h. Pcsk

Copyright (c) 2004 Norbert Buchmuller

i. Bacnet

Copyright (C) 2012 Steve Karg

Bacnet special exception to GNU General Public License v.2:

As a special exception, if other files instantiate templates or use macros or inline functions from this file, or you compile this file and link it with other works to produce a work based on this file, this file does not by itself cause the resulting work to be covered by the GNU General Public License. However the source code for this file must still be made available in accordance with section (3) of the GNU General Public License.

This exception does not invalidate any other reasons why a work based on this file might be covered by the GNU General Public License.

j. Vsftpd

Copyright (c) Chris Evans

As copyright holder, I give permission for vsftpd to be linked to the OpenSSL libraries. This includes permission for vsftpd binaries to be distributed linked against the OpenSSL libraries. All other obligations under the GPL v2 remain intact.

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.



16.1.1 Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

16.1.2 GNU General Public License

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0 This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The “Program”, below, refers to any such program or work, and a “work based on the Program” means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term “modification”). Each licensee is addressed as “you”.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1 You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program’s source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2 You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a. You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- b. You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- c. If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

-
- 3 You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:
 - a. Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
 - b. Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
 - c. Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for non-commercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

- 4 You may not copy, modify, sub-license, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sub-license or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
- 5 You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.
- 6 Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.
- 7 If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8 If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9 The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and “any later version”, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10 If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

16.1.3 No Warranty

11 BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12 IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

16.1.4 End of Terms and Conditions

Appendix: How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the “copyright” line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the program’s name and a brief idea of what it does.>

Copyright (C) 19yy <name of author>

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) 19yy name of author

Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w`.

This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c` for details.

The hypothetical commands `show w` and `show c` should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w` and `show c`; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a “copyright disclaimer” for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program

`Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.

<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1989

Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Library General Public License instead of this License.

16.2 GNU Lesser General Public License v.2.1

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the GNU Lesser General Public License v.2.1 reprinted below.

a. Libmodbus

Copyright (c) 2008-2014 Stephane Raimbault

b. Px5g

Copyright (c) 2009 Steven Barth

Copyright (c) 2014 Felix Fietkau

c. Uci

Copyright (c) 2008-2014 OpenWrt.org

Copyright (c) 2016 LEDE Project

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 2.1, February 1999

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

16.2.1 Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages--typically libraries--of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can re-link them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others.

Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs.

When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library.

We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances.

For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License.

In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system.

Although the Lesser General Public License is Less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

16.2.2 Terms and Conditions for copying and distribution and modification

0 This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called “this License”). Each licensee is addressed as “you”.

1 A “Library” means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

2 The “Library”, below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A “work based on the Library” means either the library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term “modification”.)

“Source code” for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a Library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

3 You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library’s complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

4 You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a. The modified work must itself be a software library.
- b. You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- c. You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- d. If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful. (For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License,

whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

- 5 You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

- 6 You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.

If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

- 7 A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a “work that uses the Library”. Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a “work that uses the Library” with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a “work that uses the library”. The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a “work that uses the Library” uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law.

If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

- 8 As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a “work that uses the Library” with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer’s own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

- Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable work that uses the Library”, as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)
- Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user’s computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with.
- Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.
- If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.
- Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the “work that uses the Library” must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

- 9 You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:
 - Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.
 - Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.
- 10 You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

-
- 11 You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.
- 12 Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.
- 13 If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.
- If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.
- 14 It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.
- This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.
- 15 If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
- 16 The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.
- Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.
- 17 If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of

all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

16.2.3 No Warranty

- 1 BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
- 2 IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

16.2.4 End of Terms and Conditions

How to apply these terms to your new libraries:

- If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License).
- To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

one line to give the library's name and an idea of what it does.

Copyright (C) year name of author

This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU

Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.

signature of Ty Coon, 1 April 1990, Ty Coon, President of Vice.
That's all there is to it!

16.3 MIT license

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the MIT license reprinted below.

a. Libexpat

Copyright (c) 1998-2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd and Clark Cooper
Copyright (c) 2001-2016 Expat maintainers

b. Luacjson

Copyright (c) 2010-2012 Mark Pulford

c. Luaexpat

Copyright (c) 2003-2007 The Kepler Project

d. Luajit

Copyright (c) 2005-2017 Mike Pall

e. Luasocket

Copyright (c) 2004-2013 Diego Nehab

f. Luasql

Copyright (c) 2003-2016 the Kepler Project

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

16.4 MIT-like license

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the MIT-like license reprinted below.

a. Ncurses

Copyright (c) 1998-2007, 2008 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, distribute with modifications, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE ABOVE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name(s) of the above copyright holders shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization.

16.5 BSD-3 license

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the BSD-3 license reprinted below.

a. Bish

Copyright (c) 2013-2014 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.

b. Pcre

Copyright (c) 1997-2017 University of Cambridge

c. Redis

Copyright (c) 2006-2015 Salvatore Sanfilippo

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1 Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2 Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3 Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR

OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

16.6 BSD-2 license

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the BSD-2 license reprinted below.

a. File

Copyright (c) 1986, 1987, 1989, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1994, 1995 Ian F. Darwin

Maintained 1994 - by Christos Zoulas

This software is not subject to any export provision of the United States

Department of Commerce, and may be exported to any country or planet.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1 Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice immediately at the beginning of the file, without modification, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer.
- 2 Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

16.7 BSD-2-like license

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the BSD-2-like license reprinted below.

a. Nginx

Copyright (c) 2002-2017 Igor Sysoev

Copyright (c) 2011-2017 Nginx, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1 Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2 Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT

NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

16.8 Open source software components (1)

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the license reprinted below.

a. Dropbear

Copyright (c) 2002-2015 Matt Johnston

Portions Copyright (c) 2004 Mihnea Stoenescu

All rights reserved.

License Terms

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

16.9 LIBPNG license

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the LIBPNG license reprinted below.

a. Libpng

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE:

If you modify libpng you may insert additional notices immediately following this sentence.

This code is released under the libpng license.

libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000 through 1.6.29, March 16, 2017 are Copyright (c) 2000-2002, 2004, 2006-2017 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, are derived from

libpng-1.0.6, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Simon-Pierre Cadieux
Eric S. Raymond
Mans Rullgard
Cosmin Truta
Gilles Vollant
James Yu
Mandar Sahastrabudde
Google Inc.
Vadim Barkov

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

Some files in the “contrib” directory and some configure-generated files that are distributed with libpng have other copyright owners and are released under other open source licenses.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998-2000 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, are derived from libpng-0.96, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane
Glenn Randers-Pehrson
Willem van Schaik

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996-1997 Andreas Dilger, are derived from libpng-0.88, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler
Kevin Bracey
Sam Bushell
Magnus Holmgren
Greg Roelofs
Tom Tanner

Some files in the “scripts” directory have other copyright owners but are released under this license.

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995-1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, “Contributing Authors” is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger

Dave Martindale

Guy Eric Schalnat

Paul Schmidt

Tim Wegner

The PNG Reference Library is supplied “AS IS”. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages, which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

- 1 The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.
- 2 Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
- 3 This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated.

END OF COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE.

16.10 Open source software components (2)

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the license reprinted below.

a. Zlib

Copyright (C) 1995-2017 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler

License Terms

This software is provided ‘as-is’, without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

- 1 The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
- 2 This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly Mark Adler

jloup@gzip.org madler@alumni.caltech.edu

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the OpenSSL license and the original SSLeay license reprinted below.

a. Openssl

Copyright (c) 1998-2017 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1 Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2 Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3 All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"
- 4 The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.
- 5 Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
- 6 Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

=====
This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).
This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)

All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed.

If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used.

This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1 Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2 Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3 All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)" The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the routines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).
- 4 If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement:
"This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publicly available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution license [including the GNU Public License.]

16.11 Open source software components (3)

The following open source software components is dedicated to the public domain by its authors in accordance with the terms below.

a. **SQLite3**

All of the code and documentation in SQLite has been dedicated to the public domain by the authors. All code authors, and representatives of the companies they work for, have signed affidavits dedicating their contributions to the public domain and originals of those signed affidavits are stored in a fire-safe at the main offices of Hwaci. Anyone is free to copy, modify, publish, use, compile, sell, or distribute the original SQLite code, either in source code form or as a compiled binary, for any purpose, commercial or non-commercial, and by any means.

The previous paragraph applies to the deliverable code and documentation in SQLite - those parts of the SQLite library that you actually bundle and ship with a larger application. Some scripts used as part of the build process (for example the "configure" scripts generated by autoconf) might fall under other open-source licenses. Nothing from these build scripts ever reaches the final deliverable SQLite library, however, and so the licenses associated with those scripts should not be a factor in assessing your rights to copy and use the SQLite library.

All of the deliverable code in SQLite has been written from scratch. No code has been taken from other projects or from the open internet. Every line of code can

be traced back to its original author, and all of those authors have public domain dedications on file. So the SQLite code base is clean and is uncontaminated with licensed code from other projects.

16.12 BSD

The following open source software components are licensed in accordance with the modified BSD license reprinted below.

a. Unzip

Copyright (c) 1990-2009 Info-ZIP. All rights reserved.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Info-ZIP" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Mark Adler, John Bush, Karl Davis, Harald Denker, Jean-Michel Dubois, Jean-loup Gailly, Hunter Goatley, Ed Gordon, Ian Gorman, Chris Herborth, Dirk Haase, Greg Hartwig, Robert Heath, Jonathan Hudson, Paul Kienitz, David Kirschbaum, Johnny Lee, Onno van der Linden, Igor Mandrichenko, Steve P. Miller, Sergio Monesi, Keith Owens, George Petrov, Greg Roelofs, Kai Uwe Rommel, Steve Salisbury, Dave Smith, Steven M. Schweda, Christian Spieler, Cosmin Truta, Antoine Verheijen, Paul von Behren, Rich Wales, Mike White.

License Terms

This software is provided "as is," without warranty of any kind, express or implied. In no event shall Info-ZIP or its contributors be held liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special or consequential damages arising out of the use of or inability to use this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the above disclaimer and the following restrictions:

- 1 Redistributions of source code (in whole or in part) must retain the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions.
- 2 Redistributions in binary form (compiled executables and libraries) must reproduce the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions in documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. The sole exception to this condition is redistribution of a standard UnZipSFX binary (including SFXWiz) as part of a self-extracting archive; that is permitted without inclusion of this license, as long as the normal SFX banner has not been removed from the binary or disabled.
- 3 Altered versions--including, but not limited to, ports to new operating systems, existing ports with new graphical interfaces, versions with modified or added functionality, and dynamic, shared, or static library versions not from Info-ZIP-- must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source or, if binaries, compiled from the original source. Such altered versions also must not be misrepresented as being Info-ZIP releases--including, but not limited to, labelling of the altered versions with the names "Info-ZIP" (or any variation thereof, including, but not limited to, different capitalizations), "Pocket UnZip," "WiZ" or "MacZip" without the explicit permission of Info-ZIP. Such altered versions are further prohibited from mis-representative use of the Zip-Bugs or Info-ZIP e-mail addresses or the Info-ZIP URL(s), such as to imply Info-ZIP will provide support for the altered versions.
- 4 Info-ZIP retains the right to use the names "Info-ZIP," "Zip," "UnZip," "UnZipSFX," "WiZ," "Pocket UnZip," "Pocket Zip," and "MacZip" for its own source and binary releases.

All of the code and documentation in SQLite has been dedicated to the public domain by the authors. All code authors, and representatives of the companies they work for, have signed affidavits dedicating their contributions to the public domain and originals of those signed affidavits are stored in a fire-safe at the main offices of Hwaci. Anyone is free to copy, modify, publish, use, compile, sell, or distribute the original SQLite code, either in source code form or as a compiled binary, for any purpose, commercial or non-commercial, and by any means.

The previous paragraph applies to the deliverable code and documentation in SQLite - those parts of the SQLite library that you actually bundle and ship with a larger application. Some scripts used as part of the build process (for example the "configure" scripts generated by autoconf) might fall under other open-source licenses. Nothing from these build scripts ever reaches the final deliverable SQLite library, however, and so the licenses associated with those scripts should not be a factor in assessing your rights to copy and use the SQLite library.

All of the deliverable code in SQLite has been written from scratch. No code has been taken from other projects or from the open internet. Every line of code can be traced back to its original author, and all of those authors have public domain dedications on file. So the SQLite code base is clean and is uncontaminated with licensed code from other projects.

Schneider Electric Industries SAS

If you have technical questions, please contact the Customer Care Centre in your country.
www.se.com/contact

© 2022 Schneider Electric, all rights reserved